Table of Contents

Preface...........................................................................................................................................................9
Related documentation...............................................................................................................................9
  Offline documentation..........................................................................................................................10
Training.....................................................................................................................................................10
Getting help with Kofax products........................................................................................................10

Chapter 1: Installation planning..............................................................................................................12
Utilities......................................................................................................................................................12
License Proxy.........................................................................................................................................13
Licensing information...............................................................................................................................13
  Concurrent user licensing.....................................................................................................................13
  Activate a license in TotalAgility........................................................................................................14
Kofax Message Connector.......................................................................................................................14
  System limits.........................................................................................................................................15
Reporting Server....................................................................................................................................15
Kofax VRS Elite.......................................................................................................................................15
Web Capture Service...............................................................................................................................16
Scan Agent Service................................................................................................................................16

Chapter 2: TotalAgility installation..........................................................................................................17
Perform a silent installation......................................................................................................................17
  Silent installation for Database Only..................................................................................................18
  Silent installation for upgrading databases........................................................................................23
  Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server.......................................................28
  Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server.............................................................38
  Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server.................................................................40
  Silent installation of multiple instances of Message Connectors....................................................48
Perform a standard installation...............................................................................................................49
  Express installation............................................................................................................................50
  Standard installation of Database Only...............................................................................................51
  Standard installation for upgrading databases..................................................................................54
  Standard installation of the Web Server.............................................................................................55
  Standard installation of the Application Server..................................................................................56
  Standard installation of the Web and Application Server.................................................................62
  Standard installation of Real Time Transformation Server.............................................................69
Upgrade Transformation Designer Help.................................................................................................71
Perform TotalAgility installation in a Docker container ............................................................... 72
  Overview ................................................................................................................................. 72
  Limitations ............................................................................................................................. 72
  Prerequisites .......................................................................................................................... 72
  Install Docker on the Windows server 2016 and higher ....................................................... 73
  Create a TotalAgility Docker container image ...................................................................... 74
  Silent installation configuration in Docker ............................................................................. 75
  Run a Docker container ........................................................................................................ 81
  Using secrets ......................................................................................................................... 85
  Import SSL certificate on the container ............................................................................... 87
  Use Windows authentication with IIS and SQL server ......................................................... 88

Install TotalAgility on a non-standard port ............................................................................. 91
  Edit bindings .......................................................................................................................... 91
  Update the base address ...................................................................................................... 91
  Restart the Streaming Service ............................................................................................. 92

Install databases manually .................................................................................................... 92
  Import Artifacts ..................................................................................................................... 96

Configure TotalAgility for high availability .......................................................................... 96

Access TotalAgility through iPad or iPhone ......................................................................... 97

Federated Security-Generate a common machine key ................................................................ 97

Encrypt and decrypt the TotalAgility configuration files ....................................................... 98
  Encrypt and decrypt Web.config .......................................................................................... 98
  Encrypt and decrypt the configuration files of executables ................................................ 98
  Use the Kofax.CEBPM.Encryption.exe utility ...................................................................... 99
  Encrypt the configuration files in a Docker container ....................................................... 101

Edit the TotalAgility configuration settings ........................................................................ 102
  Update the parameter values .............................................................................................. 102
  Update the settings for a license server .............................................................................. 103
  Support export vertical scaling ............................................................................................ 103
  Anti-Cross Site Request Forgery (CSRF) measures ............................................................ 104
  Configure the wait time for export activities ...................................................................... 105
  Update the settings for manual authentication ................................................................ 105
  Update the settings for manual and Windows authentication ......................................... 107
  Update settings for the TotalAgility linked servers ............................................................ 108
  Add custom job thread pools ............................................................................................. 108
  Add a thread pool monitoring interval ............................................................................... 110

Install the language pack ...................................................................................................... 111
  Install the .NET Framework language packs .................................................................... 112
Chapter 3: Transformation Server Bundle installation

Perform a silent installation
Encrypt and decrypt the configuration file
Use Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe
Decrypt the configuration file
Edit the configuration file
Install the NLP language packs manually
Upgrade Transformation Server using silent installation
Uninstall the Transformation Server

Chapter 4: Reporting Server installation

Perform a silent installation
Perform a standard installation
Uninstall the Reporting Server

Chapter 5: Integrate Microsoft SharePoint with TotalAgility

Configure the Application Pool for the SharePoint communicator site
Update the Web configuration file
To get custom pages
To load the assembly from GAC
To support event handlers
For a SharePoint site
Configure the TotalAgility Integration with SharePoint using SSL
Network authentication for SharePoint and TotalAgility
TotalAgility and SharePoint are on the same domain
TotalAgility and SharePoint are on different domains
Configure the TotalAgility custom web pages in SharePoint
Enable single sign-on
Add the TotalAgility custom web pages to the SharePoint quick launch menu
Add the create TotalAgility workflow context menu item to a document library
Configure the custom web pages
Configure the TotalAgility Web parts in the SharePoint server
Set up the Microsoft SharePoint and TotalAgility servers to provide fault tolerance

Chapter 6: Integrate Microsoft Dynamics CRM with TotalAgility

Install Dynamics CRM
Update Web.config for Dynamics CRM................................................................. 141
Update Web.config for the CRM virtual directory.................................................. 143

Chapter 7: Integrate Microsoft Dynamics AX with TotalAgility............................... 145
Create Dynamics AX service reference to the TotalAgility web service................. 146
Create Dynamics AX 09 service reference to the TotalAgility web service............. 146
Create Dynamics AX 12 service reference to the TotalAgility web service............. 146
Add a reference in Dynamics AX........................................................................... 147
  In Dynamics AX 09............................................................................................. 147
  In Dynamics AX 12............................................................................................ 147
Copy files manually............................................................................................... 147
Import the TotalAgility connector class into Dynamics AX..................................... 148
Edit database X++ event methods........................................................................ 148
  Register the database log events........................................................................ 148
Verify the Application Pool account...................................................................... 149

Chapter 8: Integrate Microsoft Outlook with TotalAgility......................................... 150

Chapter 9: Integrate Micro Focus Content Manager with TotalAgility.................... 151
  Identify the Content Manager SDK Version....................................................... 151
  Set up the Micro Focus Content Manager server............................................... 151
    Install and configure TotalAgilityTrimCommunicatorService......................... 151
    Configure the event handler in Content Manager......................................... 153

Chapter 10: Integrate Kofax SignDoc with TotalAgility............................................. 156
  Set up the Kofax SignDoc server........................................................................ 156

Chapter 11: KCM Proxy installation on the Web server........................................... 157
  Silent installation............................................................................................... 157
  Standard installation......................................................................................... 157
  Docker installation......................................................................................... 157
  Update the KCM Server URL in TotalAgility Web.config............................... 158
    Manually update the KCM Server URL in TotalAgility Web.config................. 158
    Use the Configuration Utility....................................................................... 159
  Install KCM Proxy manually......................................................................... 159

Chapter 12: Configure HTTPS communication....................................................... 160
  Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS communication........................................... 160
    Enable SSL for the TotalAgility application in IIS......................................... 160
    Update the TotalAgility configuration files..................................................... 160
  Configure the Transformation Designer for HTTPS communication................ 164

Chapter 13: Install TotalAgility License Proxy.......................................................... 165
  Modify the TotalAgility license proxy information............................................ 166
  Modify the TotalAgility license proxy information............................................ 167
Chapter 14: Configure VRS Elite for TotalAgility................................................................. 168
  Kofax VRS Basic or Professional OEM installations......................................................... 168
  Standalone installations............................................................................................... 168
  Kofax VRS Elite licensing managed by the TotalAgility License Server...................... 168
    Install VRS Server..................................................................................................... 168
  Use Kofax VRS Elite with the TotalAgility Scan Client............................................. 169

Chapter 15: Kofax Web Capture Service installation......................................................... 170
  Install at the default location....................................................................................... 170
  Install at custom location.......................................................................................... 170
  Use the Web Capture Service on multiuser environment.......................................... 170
    Use the Web Capture Service on MS Terminal Server........................................... 170
    Use the Web Capture Service on Citrix................................................................. 171
  Install the Web Capture Service as Windows Service.............................................. 171
  Upgrade the Web Capture Service............................................................................ 171

Chapter 16: Scan Agent Service installation..................................................................... 172
  Standard installation.................................................................................................... 172
  Scanning with Scan Agent Service............................................................................. 173

Chapter 17: Launch TotalAgility...................................................................................... 174
  Launch TotalAgility Workspace.................................................................................. 174
  Launch Quick Capture............................................................................................... 174
  Guidance notes on logon.......................................................................................... 174

Chapter 18: Repair the TotalAgility installation.............................................................. 176

Chapter 19: Uninstall TotalAgility.................................................................................. 177
  Use the installation wizard....................................................................................... 177
  Use the silent mode.................................................................................................... 177

Chapter 20: Upgrade TotalAgility.................................................................................. 178
  Capture data migration.............................................................................................. 179
  Capture binary data storage...................................................................................... 180
  Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode.......................................................................... 181
  Upgrade databases manually.................................................................................... 181
    Upgrade reporting databases 2.0.2...................................................................... 183
  Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode.......................................................................... 184
    Upgrade Message Connectors instances.............................................................. 186

Chapter 21: Troubleshooting......................................................................................... 187
  TotalAgilityAppPool exists....................................................................................... 187
  Download software updates...................................................................................... 187
  Installation failure in IPv4 and IPv6 environment...................................................... 187
  Images not displayed in Workspace after scanning................................................ 188
Exception during Transformation Designer projects import.................................................. 188
Search feature not working in TotalAgility help.................................................................. 189
Site location invalid error.................................................................................................. 190
   (405) Method not allowed error.................................................................................. 190
MimeType error................................................................................................................ 190
Preface

This guide includes instructions for installing and upgrading to Kofax TotalAgility 7.8.0, including:

- Preparations, decisions, precautions, settings, and tips to help you install Kofax TotalAgility.
- Instructions for installing Kofax TotalAgility in silent mode or using the wizard in a client/server or standalone configuration.
- Information about installing other Kofax products used with Kofax TotalAgility.
- Information about updating various TotalAgility configuration files post installation, instead of manually updating each configuration file and the settings separately.

Read this guide completely before installing the software.

Related documentation

The full documentation set for Kofax TotalAgility is available at the following location.

https://docshield.kofax.com/Portal/Products/KTA/7.8.0-dpm5ap0jk8/KTA.htm

In addition to this guide, the documentation set includes the following items:

- **Kofax TotalAgility Prerequisites Guide**: Provides system requirements for installing TotalAgility, instructions for running the prerequisite utility, and a software checklist for various installation types.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Integration Server Installation Guide**: Describes how to install Kofax Integration Server and integrate it with other products.
- **Kofax TotalAgility On-Premise Multi-Tenant Installation Guide**: Describes how to install and configure On-Premise Multi-Tenant system.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide**: Explains how to use the Configuration Utility to update settings across various configuration files for different types of installation and deployment.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Administrator's Guide**: Provides information to the administrator on configuring and maintaining a TotalAgility installation.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Architecture Guide**: Provides an overview of the TotalAgility architecture, covering various deployments for on-premise, on-premise multi-tenancy and Azure environments.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Best Practices Guide**: Describes the best practices you must follow when using TotalAgility to improve performance, cost, maintenance, availability and security.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Features Guide**: Provides an overview of the TotalAgility features.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Migration Guide**: Provides information on TotalAgility upgrades from different versions and post upgrade configuration.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Help**: Provides details about using TotalAgility to design business jobs and cases, assign resources, create forms, integrate with external applications, and more.
- **Kofax TotalAgility Workspace Help**: Describes how to use the Workspace to manage activities, jobs, and resources.
Offline documentation

Customers who require offline documentation can download the individual zip files available on a per language basis, such as Kofax TotalAgilityDocumentation7.8.0_EN.zip and Kofax TotalAgilityDocumentation7.8.0_DE.zip from the Kofax Fulfillment Site.

See Access the TotalAgility documentation for more information

Training

Kofax offers both classroom and computer-based training that will help you make the most of your Kofax TotalAgility solution. Visit the Kofax website at www.Kofax.com for complete details about the available training options and schedules.

Getting help with Kofax products

The Kofax Knowledge Base repository contains articles that are updated on a regular basis to keep you informed about Kofax products. We encourage you to use the Knowledge Base to obtain answers to your product questions.

To access the Kofax Knowledge Base, go to the Kofax website and select Support on the home page.

Note The Kofax Knowledge Base is optimized for use with Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox or Microsoft Edge.

The Kofax Knowledge Base provides:
• Powerful search capabilities to help you quickly locate the information you need.
  Type your search terms or phrase into the Search box, and then click the search icon.
• Product information, configuration details and documentation, including release news.
  Scroll through the Kofax Knowledge Base home page to locate a product family. Then click a product
  family name to view a list of related articles. Please note that some product families require a valid
  Kofax Portal login to view related articles.
• Access to the Kofax Customer Portal (for eligible customers).
  Click the Customer Support link at the top of the page, and then click Log in to the Customer Portal.
• Access to the Kofax Partner Portal (for eligible partners).
  Click the Partner Support link at the top of the page, and then click Log in to the Partner Portal.
• Access to Kofax support commitment, lifecycle policies, electronic fulfillment details, and self-service
  tools.
  Scroll to the General Support section, click Support Details, and then select the appropriate tab.
Chapter 1

Installation planning

For information on supported operating systems and other system requirements, see the Kofax TotalAgility Technical Specifications document on the Kofax TotalAgility Product Documentation site. The document is updated regularly, and we recommend that you review it carefully to ensure success with your TotalAgility product.

Review these important notes before you proceed with the installation.

- To view information on the system requirements for installing TotalAgility, instructions for running the prerequisite utility, and the software checklist for various installation types, download the Kofax TotalAgility Prerequisites Guide from the Kofax Fulfillment Site.
- If your solution includes multiple Kofax products, review the Kofax Technical Specifications document.
- Obtain a license key for TotalAgility from your Account Manager or Kofax Support.
- Before extracting the TotalAgility installation ZIP file, unblock the file from the file properties window.
- The TotalAgility servers should run on the same time zone, because issues may occur if they run on different time zones.
- Upgrade installations of Kofax Transformation Designer that connects to TotalAgility 7.8.0.
- TotalAgility includes a limited number of VRS Elite licenses. You may need to purchase additional licenses, depending on the number of scanners you plan to use with VRS. See the Kofax Scanner Configurator to verify VRS certification and licensing requirements for your scanner.

Utilities

The following utilities are available on the TotalAgility installation media.

- To ensure all the required software is installed on your computer before installing TotalAgility, run the Prerequisite utility. For more information, see the Kofax TotalAgility Prerequisites Guide.
- After installing TotalAgility, you can update the configuration settings by editing each configuration file separately or by running the configuration utility available on the installation media. The utility allows you to modify or update the settings across multiple configuration files at one go instead of editing each file separately. You must manually copy the utility onto each server where the configuration settings are to be modified. See the Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide.
- To test how an image will look once the eVRS setting is applied to it, run the EVRSCheck utility.
License Proxy

Use TotalAgility License Proxy when the license server is not directly accessible from VRS stations or the linked TotalAgility server. For example, due to security restrictions or on using Azure. Using the License Proxy, you can use a TotalAgility license configuration through TotalAgility web services rather than by directly addressing the license server.

A license proxy is also useful for network topologies where multiple networks are logically separate, such as Microsoft Azure cloud. A License proxy allows computers in Network A to use a TotalAgility license server in Network B. A license proxy uses TotalAgility web services (over HTTP/HTTPS) to communicate with the license server. The license proxy computer needs a working internet connection to facilitate the HTTP/HTTPS traffic to the License server.

See TotalAgility License Proxy installation.

| Important | If you have previously upgraded from Kofax TotalAgility 7.1.0 to 7.2.0 and are now upgrading to 7.8.0 and want to use License Proxy, then you must manually setup the license proxy on TotalAgility 7.2.0 before upgrading to 7.8.0. This action is not required if directly upgrading from TotalAgility 7.1.0 to 7.8.0. |

Licensing information

This section provides information on licensing details.

Concurrent user licensing

In the Concurrent User model, many users can simultaneously log into the system. Each user session consumes a license. For example, if a single user logs into the TotalAgility Designer and the TotalAgility Workspace simultaneously or the user logs into the Designer in two browsers such as Internet Explorer and Chrome, the user consumes two concurrent licenses. When a user logs off from a session, the license server automatically releases the license.

When the number of concurrent users reaches the maximum, the system automatically checks for available reserved licenses. If any reserved license is available, a new user can log on and the count of available reserve licenses is reduced by 1. Keep the following items in mind when managing reserved licenses:

- A reserved license expires seven days after you begin using the license.
- You can use each reserved license only twice within 12 months.

If the user tries to log on after the number of concurrent logons reaches the limit and there are no reserved licenses, the system displays an error message and additional users cannot log on.

If a reserved license expires, an error message appears in the TotalAgility Designer and TotalAgility Workspace.
Activate a license in TotalAgility

The license period starts once the license is activated. So you can skip activation during installation and only activate it when you are ready to use TotalAgility.

Activate a license in TotalAgility On-Premise

If you log on to TotalAgility for the first time and the license is not activated, the License Activation window opens.

1. In the License Activation window, either click **Next** to accept the default values for the License Server and Port Number, or enter the new values.
2. Click **Set license server** to save the information.
3. For further instructions, see Activate the License Server step in Perform a standard installation.

**Note** If you have issues activating your licence, contact Kofax support at: [http://www.kofax.com/support/tools/](http://www.kofax.com/support/tools/)

Automatic recovery

After TotalAgility installation, it is possible to manually configure the Kofax License Server Service to automatically restart in the event of a service error.

1. Go to **Service Control Manger**.
2. Edit the properties for the Kofax License Server Service.
3. Go to the **Recovery** tab.
4. Configure options for how the service should respond after the first, second, and subsequent failures. You do not need to restart the service for the changes to take effect.

**Note** You can also do this configuration at the command line. Example:

```
sc.exe failure KSALicenseService actions= restart/660000/restart/660000/""/660000 reset= 86400
```

Kofax Message Connector

Kofax Message Connector is a Windows service responsible for importing messages and files in many electronic formats. It retrieves documents from various sources and saves them in its internal storage making them available for retrieval through a web service interface. TotalAgility connects to the Message Connector web service interface and retrieves the documents for import.

Kofax Message Connector can import messages and files from a number of sources:

- Email messages including attachments using various email protocols (SMTP, POP3, IMAP, EWS).
- Fax messages (via internal fax over IP server or external fax servers: Kofax Communication Server, RightFax, Biscom).
- Files from a local or network folder.
For information on prerequisites for the Kofax Message Connector, see the *Kofax TotalAgility Prerequisites Guide* and for information on deployment scenarios and advanced configurations, see the *Kofax TotalAgility Administrator's Guide*.

**System limits**

Following system limits are applicable for 64-bit installations. For 32-bit installations, these limits may vary.

- The maximum size of a message in Message Connector storage is 8 GB.
- Up to three Message Connector instances on a single computer are allowed.
- For KfxConverter, the maximum system memory usage limit is up to 4 GB.

**Note** The limit of the input file size may vary depending on the number of pages in a document, type of document and type of conversion.

**Reporting Server**

Kofax Reporting provides centralized storage of historical operational metrics and audit data. Kofax Reporting includes components, such as the reporting service and databases.

**Important** Due to high process utilization by Transformation Server (99%), Reporting Server is known to produce **SQL Timeout** error when installed on the same machine as Transformation Server. Therefore, you must install Reporting Server separately from Transformation Server.

**Kofax VRS Elite**

We highly recommend Kofax VRS Elite, a patented image perfection software that dramatically improves scanning productivity and document capture efficiency when used with a VRS-certified scanner. If your scanner is not VRS-certified, you can use the Kofax image processing technology included with TotalAgility.

Several Kofax VRS licensing options are available:

**Kofax VRS Basic or Professional OEM**

Automatically activate a Kofax VRS Basic or Professional OEM license that is included with many industry-standard scanners. License activation for these scanners is required only when upgrading to Kofax VRS Elite.

**Standalone workstation**

Manually activate a standalone license, which stays on the workstation until it is deactivated. The standalone license can only be activated on one scan station at a time.

**TotalAgility license server**

Centrally manage concurrent VRS Elite licenses from the TotalAgility license server.
To centrally manage VRS licenses through the TotalAgility license server, each VRS station needs to communicate with the license server directly or through a license proxy.

Web Capture Service

To enable web scanning, you must install the Kofax Web Capture Service. When installing through the browser, you must have administrative rights to complete the installation.

Install the Kofax Web Capture Service either at the default location or to a custom location.

You must install the Web Capture Service only once, and web scanning is enabled across all the supported browsers.

Temporary files are created under the folder “Interprocess”. The user must have read/write access to this folder.

You can also use the Web Capture Service on multiuser environments.

Scan Agent Service

The Scan Agent Service is an asynchronous upload capability, which allows scan operator to continue on to the next batch, without needing to wait for the previous scan job to complete upload.

This service is useful in remote scanning scenarios, where the scan station has limited network bandwidth to the main TotalAgility site.

The capability allows scan operator to keep up with physical scanning throughput, while image upload is done in the background, thus enhancing the scan operator efficiency.

This feature is only available for Scan Create New Job forms.

A Scan Create New Job form automatically uses the asynchronous image upload mode if it detects Scan Agent Service installed on the scan station. Otherwise, it uses the synchronous image upload mode if the Scan Agent Service is not detected.

For Device Create New Job form, a pre-condition of [SCANNED] > 0 must be added to the first activity in a process, to allow the process to wait for all images to be uploaded before moving on to the first activity.
Chapter 2

TotalAgility installation

This chapter describes two methods for installing TotalAgility:

- **Silent installation** for multiple servers that use the same configuration.
- **Standard installation** using the installation wizard.

You can install TotalAgility as one of the following types:

- **Database Only**: Installs only the database component of Kofax TotalAgility only; no other components are installed.
- **Upgrade Databases**: Upgrades all the databases to the latest version of TotalAgility when TotalAgility is not installed locally.

**Note** Upgrading the databases prior to version TotalAgility 7.4.0 is not supported when TotalAgility is not installed locally.

- **Web Server**: Installs a server to point to any Application server. In case you install TotalAgility on a computer other than the default port, you must enter the Application Server machine name and port number. For example, `<appserver_name>:82`. A Web server installs the SDK Services and user interfaces for the TotalAgility Designer and TotalAgility Workspace.
- **Application Server**: Installs a server to which remote clients will connect and sets up their Web servers. An Application server only installs Core services and does not install user interfaces and any shortcuts for the TotalAgility Designer and Workspace.
- **Web and Application Server**: Installs the Web and Application servers on a single computer.
- **Real Time Transformation Service**: Installs the Real Time Transformation Service.

**Note**

- You must have administrator account to install TotalAgility.
- Ensure that the user who will run TotalAgility has "Log on as Service" rights.
- You can use hotkeys to navigate to next screen.
- Post installation, you can modify the configuration settings by editing each configuration file separately or running the configuration utility. The configuration utility is available on the installation media. You must manually copy the utility onto each server where the configuration settings are to be modified. See the *Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide*.

### Perform a silent installation

Use the TotalAgility silent installation to install TotalAgility automatically from a command line or a batch file. After you edit the silent installation file, the installation proceeds without any user interaction.
See also:
- Silent installation for Database Only
- Silent installation for upgrading databases
- Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server
- Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server
- Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server

Silent installation for Database Only

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open `SilentInstallConfig.xml` using a text editor.
2. In `SilentInstallConfig.xml`, update the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DatabaseInformation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the databases. Set to false to ignore installing databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverwriteIfExists</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, overwrites the existing databases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** If the existing database details are not valid, or if the databases do not exist, an errors occurs and the installation fails.

| **Main Database**      |               |                                                                             |
| DatabaseName           | TotalAgility  | Specify the name of the Main database.                                     |
| Server                 | server name   | Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.                 |

**Note** When installing TotalAgility with a remote database, update `SilentInstallConfig.xml` with the server name (`<Server>servername</Server>`) of the machine on which the database resides. The account used to connect to the database during the installation requires `DB_CREATOR` rights.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Audit Database

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Audit database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitializeScript</td>
<td>Initialise_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConversionScript</td>
<td>Convert_Audit.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Finished Jobs Database

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Finished Jobs database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Archive.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Archive.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>Convert_Archive.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| WindowsAuthentication | true          | Uses Windows credentials for logging in.  
If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank. |
| UserName           | empty         |                                                                             |
| Password           | empty         |                                                                             |
| NewDatabase        | false         | Set to true to create new database.                                        |

**DataLayer - TotalAgility_Documents Database**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Documents</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Documents database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Repository2012_TablesCreate.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Repository2012_Drop.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>Repository2012_Convert.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| WindowsAuthentication | true          | Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.  
If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank. |
| UserName           | empty         |                                                                             |
| Password           | empty         |                                                                             |
| NewDatabase        | false         | Set to true to create new database.                                        |

**Reporting_Analytics Database**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_TablesCreate.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitializeScript</td>
<td>Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_Initialize.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Only required for patch when SQL changes are needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting_Staging Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Install Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Change the value to DatabaseOnly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When you install only databases, the system ignores the services, and does not install services such as CoreworkerService, ImportService and ExportService.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;SiteRoot&gt;</td>
<td>Default Web Site</td>
<td>Install TotalAgility under a custom site that uses a non-standard port other than the standard ports (80 and 443). For example, create a custom site called &quot;testsite&quot; under IIS using the port number 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTAResourceName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify a username for the TotalAgility user to be created on installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTAResourcePassword</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify a password (minimum 6 alphanumeric characters) for the TotalAgility user to be created on installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If you set this parameter to true, the user can still logon using the credentials specified in the Kofax TotalAgility Resource Credentials window when installing TotalAgility.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Save and close the file.

4. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.

5. Run `Setup.exe /Silent`.

The databases are installed automatically.

The system generates a log file that reports errors (if any).

The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

When automating the installation, if you run setup.exe from the command line, or run setup.exe as a silent installation, one of the codes returns to indicate the following:

- 0 = Success
- 1 = Success with warnings
- 2 = Failure

See also:
- Silent installation for upgrading databases
- Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server
- Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server
- Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server

Silent installation for upgrading databases

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open SilentInstallConfig.xml using a text editor.
2. In SilentInstallConfig.xml, update the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;ServicesInstallOptions&gt;</code></td>
<td>true for all services</td>
<td>Set to false for all the services. <strong>Note</strong> When you upgrade TotalAgility databases, the services, such as Core Worker Service, Reporting Service, License Service, Transformation Server are ignored and not installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to false to ignore installing databases. If set to true, installs the databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverwriteIfExists</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>If set to true, overwrites the existing databases. <strong>Note</strong> If the existing database details are not valid, or if the databases does not exist, an error occurs and the installation fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Main database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When installing TotalAgility with a remote database, update SilentInstallConfig.xml with the server name (&lt;Server&gt;servername&lt;/Server&gt;) of the machine on which the database resides. The account used to connect to the database during the installation requires DB_CREATOR rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Accept the default. If set to true, creates new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit Database</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Audit database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitializeScript</td>
<td>Initialise_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConversionScript</td>
<td>Convert_Audit.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finished Jobs Database</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Finished Jobs database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Archive.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Archive.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>Convert_Archive.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DataLayer - TotalAgility_Documents Database</td>
<td></td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Documents database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Documents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Repository2012.TablesCreate.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Repository2012.Drop.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>Repository2012.Convert.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting_Analytics Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_TablesCreate.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitializeScript</td>
<td>Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_Initialize.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Only required for patch when SQL changes are needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting_Staging Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
<td><strong>Default value</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Change the value to UpgradeDatabasesOnly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>All the databases are upgraded to the latest version of TotalAgility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> Upgrading databases prior to TotalAgility 7.4.0 is not supported when TotalAgility is not installed locally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;SiteRoot&gt;</td>
<td>Default Web Site</td>
<td>Install TotalAgility under a custom site that uses a non-standard port other than the standard ports (80 and 443).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>For example, create a custom site called &quot;testsit&quot; under IIS using the port number 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTAResourceName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify a username for the TotalAgility user to be created on installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTAResourcePassword</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify a password (minimum 6 alphanumeric characters) for the TotalAgility user to be created on installation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter | Default value | Description
---|---|---
RunAsSystemAccount | false | Accept the default.  

**Note** If you set this parameter to true, the user can still logon using the credentials specified in the Kofax TotalAgility Resource Credentials window when installing TotalAgility.

3. Save and close the file.
4. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.
5. Run `Setup.exe /Silent`.  
The databases are installed automatically.
The system generates a log file that reports errors (if any).
The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.
When automating the installation, if you run setup.exe from the command line, or run setup.exe as a silent installation, one of the codes returns to indicate the following:
- 0= Success  
- 1= Success with warnings  
- 2= Failure

See also:
- Silent installation for Database Only  
- Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server  
- Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server  
- Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server

### Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server

Update the following parameters for a Web-Application server installation.
1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open `SilentInstallConfig.xml` using a text editor.
2. In `SilentInstallConfig.xml`, update the following parameters.

**Note** Fix the line breaks if you copy and paste the code from this guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServicesInstallOptions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the Core Worker Service. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the Import Service. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the Export Service. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the Reporting Service. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the License Service. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the Transformation Service. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreServices</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the Core services. You can set it to false, if needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseServerName</td>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>Enter the name of the license server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PortNumber</td>
<td>3581</td>
<td>Do not change this value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SerialNumber</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Enter your TotalAgility serial number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProductCode</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Enter your TotalAgility product code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SkipLicense</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Skips activating the license. Set to false to activate the license; you must enter the serial number and product code to install TotalAgility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDirectory</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the TotalAgility destination directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Installs the databases. Set to false to ignore installing databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverwriteIfExisting</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>If set to true, overwrites the existing databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If the existing database details are not valid, or if the databases do not exist, an error occurs and the installation fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ScriptsLocation</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\</td>
<td>Specify the directory for installing scripts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Main database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Server</strong></td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When installing TotalAgility with a remote database, update SilentInstallConfig.xml with the server name (&lt;Server&gt;servername&lt;/Server&gt;) of the machine on which the database resides. The account used to connect to the database during the installation requires DB_CREATOR rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Audit Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Audit database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Finished Jobs Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Finished Jobs database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forms</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DataLayer - TotalAgility_Documents Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Documents</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Documents database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting_Analytics Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting</td>
<td>Specify the full qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting_Staging Database</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Security</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Uses Windows credentials for logging in. If set to false, provide the user name and password. Otherwise, leave the user name and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Identity Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>username</td>
<td>Enter the user name of the Windows service account for the TotalAgility services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>password</td>
<td>Enter the password of the windows service account for the TotalAgility services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If the service account name ends with a $ (dollar), do not specify the password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Accept the default. If you set this parameter to true:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services are created with LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The databases should be created using SQL authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The user can still logon using the credentials specified in the Kofax TotalAgility Resource Credentials window when installing TotalAgility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsNetworkServiceAccount</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services are created with the NT Authority\Network Service username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If you set this parameter to true, databases should be created using SQL authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prerequisite Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValidOS</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Checks if the Operating System is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLServerInstalled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to check if the SQL Server is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLClientInstalled</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to check if the SQL Client is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IISInstalled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Checks if IIS is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SslEnabled</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to enable https. See Configure for HTTPS communication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Install Info**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InstallAction</td>
<td>Install</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallMode</td>
<td>Silent</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>Set the authentication mode to Windows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Transformation Server Info**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TSConfigFile</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify the path to .ini file along with the name for Transformation Server to configure. If you provide the .ini file, the TransformationServerInfo settings are taken from the .ini file; the parameters mentioned in the SilentInstallConfig are ignored. See the .INI file Sample for the parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogFile</td>
<td>C:\Program Files \Kofax\TotalAgility \Transformation Server \Tslog.txt</td>
<td>Set the location where the Transformation Server log file will be created. If the log file path is not valid, the Transformation Server installation fails. Example: C:\Program Files \Kofax\TotalAgility \TransformationServer \TSLog.txt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallLocation</td>
<td>C:\Program Files \Kofax\TotalAgility \TransformationServer</td>
<td>To install to a different location, specify the Transformation Server destination directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsServiceAccount</td>
<td>username</td>
<td>Enter the name of the user who will run the Transformation Server. To specify a domain user, enter the user name in the format Domain\User. Ensure that the account details are correct, as under this account Transformation Server authenticates in all places where Windows authentication is used. Example: TA database. All communication and resource access will be run under this account. Therefore, the account under which Transformation Server is running must be not some dummy account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsServicePassword</td>
<td>password</td>
<td>Enter the password for the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseSpecificPool</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set this parameter to true to add this Transformation Server to a pool. Any other value, including no value, is treated as false and the Transformation Server process all activities regardless of pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PoolName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>If you set UseSpecificPool=true, enter the Transformation Server pool name. If you leave the pool name empty, all activities are processed regardless of their pools.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLEnabled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enables online learning tasks on this Transformation Server instance. Set to false or any other value to disable online learning tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td></td>
<td>If in case where multiple instances of Transformation Server are installed for improving the throughput of the capture activities, online learning should be enabled only on a single transformation server instance in the cluster.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WcfPort</td>
<td>9001</td>
<td>Enter the port that is used by TotalAgility to communicate with Transformation Server during synchronous calls, such as fuzzy searches and pushed activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReservedSlots</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Enter the number of slots on this Transformation Server that are reserved for pushed activities and high-priority activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverrideDefSlots</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>By default, the Transformation Server determines the number of simultaneously working Transformation Server controlled processes that do actual processing based on the machine CPU cores. To specify your own values, enter the value here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxSlots</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>If you set CPUSERVER_OVERRIDE_DEF_SLOTS to true, enter the number of processing slots for this Transformation Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnableSyncCalls</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enables synchronous calls. Set to false to disable synchronous calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpWestern</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for English, Spanish, Portuguese, French, and German.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpWesternExtended</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for Italian, Romanian, and Dutch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpExtended</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for Japanese, Chinese, and Korean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IsIntegration Server</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to install the TotalAgility Integration Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallLicenseProxy</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to install License Proxy. If set to true, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTAResourceName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify a username for the TotalAgility user to be created on installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KTAResourcePassword</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Specify a password (minimum 6 alphanumeric characters) for the TotalAgility user to be created on installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Starts the services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportWorkspacePackage</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to import Workspace package.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;SiteRoot&gt;</td>
<td>Default Web Site</td>
<td>Install TotalAgility under a custom site that uses a non-standard port other than the standard ports (80 and 443). For example, create a custom site called &quot;testsite&quot; under IIS using the port number 85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaptureConfiguration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CloudStorageType</td>
<td>SQLServer</td>
<td>By default, the capture data is stored in the SQL Server. Change the Cloud Storage Type to &quot;Azure&quot; for Windows Azure Blob Storage and &quot;AWS&quot; for Amazon S3 storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AzureBlobStorageConnectionString</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>The Account Connection String to connect to the Blob storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AzureBlobStorageContainerName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>The Container Name of the storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmazonS3AccessKey</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>The access key to connect to the Amazon S3 storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmazonS3SecretKey</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>The secret key to the Amazon S3 storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmazonS3BucketName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>The bucket name of the storage service. Bucket is a fundamental container in Amazon S3 for data storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmazonS3RegionName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>The S3 region name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Save and close the file.
4. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.
5. **Run** Setup.exe /Silent.

Based on the parameters set to **True** in the silent configuration file, the following items are installed:

- Kofax TotalAgility
- Kofax Import Connector (KIC)
- Kofax Transformation Designer

**Note**

- Transformation Designer is installed only when the TransformationDesignerInstaller.exe is available in the TotalAgility build folder.
- When you install Kofax TotalAgility from a network share, make sure the user has the Write permissions to the share; otherwise, the Import Connector will not get installed successfully.

- Utility for Kofax Export Connector
- Licensing Service
- Transformation Server, if the TransformationService parameter is set to true and the following parameters are set for Transformation Server:
  - WindowsServiceAccount
  - WindowsServicePassword

The system generates a log file that reports any errors.

The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

When automating the installation, if you run setup.exe from the command line, or run setup.exe as a silent installation, one of the codes returns to indicate the following:

- 0= Success
- 1= Success with warnings
- 2= Failure

**.INI file sample**

```ini
TS_SERVICE_ACCOUNT=username
TS_SERVICE_PASSWORD=password
TS_USE_SPECIFIC_POOL=False
TS_POOL_NAME=
TS_OL_ENABLED=TRUE
TS_WCF_PORT=9001
TS_RESERVED_SLOTS=0
TS_OVERRIDE_DEF_SLOTS=
TS_MAX_SLOTS=0
TS_ENABLE_SYNC_CALLS=TRUE
TS_MAIN_DB_CONNECTION_STRING=Server=servername;Trusted_Connection=Yes;Database=TotalAgility;
TS_SYNCHRONOUS_ONLY=false
```

See also:

- Silent installation for Database Only
- Silent installation for upgrading databases
- Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server
- Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server
Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server

Install TotalAgility on a separate Web or Application server.

Silent installation on an Application Server

Update the following parameters for an Application Server.

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to \TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall and open SilentInstallConfig.xml using a text editor.

2. In SilentInstallConfig.xml, update the following parameters.
   - InstallType = ApplicationServer.
   - For other parameters, see Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server.
     
     **Note** You can choose to install or not to install certain components by setting the values to True/False in the ServicesInstallOptions section of the Silent Configuration file.

3. Save and close the file.
4. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.
5. Run Setup.exe /Silent.
   
   Based on the parameters set to True in the silent configuration file, the following items are installed:
   - Kofax TotalAgility
   - Kofax Import Connector (KIC)
   - Kofax Transformation Designer
     
     **Note**
     - Transformation Designer is installed only when the Transformation DesignerInstaller.exe is available in the TotalAgility build folder.
     - When you install Kofax TotalAgility from a network share, make sure the user has the Write permissions to the share; otherwise, the Import Connector will not get installed successfully.
     - Utility for Kofax Export Connector
     - Licensing Service
     - Transformation Server, if the TransformationService parameter is set to true and the following parameters are set for Transformation Server:
       - WindowsServiceAccount
       - WindowsServicePassword
     
   The system generates a log file that reports errors (if any).

   The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

   When automating the installation, if you run setup.exe from the command line, or run setup.exe as a silent installation, one of the codes returns to indicate the following:
   - 0= Success
   - 1= Success with warnings
   - 2= Failure
Silent installation on a Web Server

1. On the installation media, navigate to `\\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open `SilentInstallConfig.xml` using a text editor.

2. In `SilentInstallConfig.xml`, update the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InstallDirectory</td>
<td>C:\Program Files \</td>
<td>Specify the TotalAgility destination directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TotalAgility\</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ApplicationServerName</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) of the application server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note If the Application server is installed on a non-standard port, you must modify the <code>&lt;ApplicationServerName&gt;</code> parameter in the <code>SilentInstallConfig.xml</code> on the Web server as follows: <code>&lt;ApplicationServerName&gt;FQDN:portnumber&lt;/ApplicationServerName&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>username</td>
<td>Enter the name of the user who will run TotalAgility if RunAsSystemAccount is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>password</td>
<td>Enter the password for the user who will run TotalAgility if RunAsSystemAccount is false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note If the service account name ends with a $ (dollar), do not specify the password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Accept the default. If set to true, the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services are created with LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Note If you set this parameter to true, databases should be created using SQL authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsNetworkService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services are created with the NT Authority\Network Service username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td></td>
<td>Note If you set this parameter to true, databases should be created using SQL authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisite Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ValidOS</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to check if the Operating System is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLServerInstalled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to check if the SQL Server is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQLClientInstalled</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to check if the SQL Client is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IISInstalled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to check if IIS is installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SslEnabled</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to enable https. See Configure for HTTPS Communication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Install Info

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InstallAction</td>
<td>Install</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallMode</td>
<td>Silent</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Enter WebServer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;SiteRoot&gt;</td>
<td>Default Web Site</td>
<td>Install TotalAgility under a custom site that uses a non-standard port other than the standard ports (80 and 443). For example, create a custom site called &quot;testsite&quot; under IIS using the port number 85.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Save and close the file.
4. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.
5. Run `Setup.exe /Silent`.

The Kofax TotalAgility is installed automatically.

The system generates a log file that reports errors (if any).

The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

When automating the installation, if you run setup.exe from the command line, or run setup.exe as a silent installation, one of the codes returns to indicate the following:

- 0= Success
- 1= Success with warnings
- 2= Failure

See also:
- Silent installation for Database Only
- Silent installation for upgrading databases
- Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server
- Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server

### Silent installation for Real Time Transformation Server

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open SilentInstallConfig.xml using a text editor.
2. In SilentInstallConfig.xml, update the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>InstallDirectory</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the TotalAgility destination directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to false to ignore installing databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverwriteIfExisting</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, overwrites the existing databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> If the existing database details are not valid, or if the databases does not exist, an error occurs and the installation fails.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Main Database**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Main database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>Server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When installing TotalAgility with a remote database, update SilentInstallConfig.xml with the server name (&lt;Server&gt;servername&lt;/Server&gt;) of the machine on which the database resides. The account used to connect to the database during the installation requires DBCreators rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Main.SQL</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Main.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitializeScript</td>
<td>Initialise_Main.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConversionScript</td>
<td>Convert_Main.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Audit Database**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility</td>
<td>Specify the name of the Audit database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parameter</strong></td>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td><strong>Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InitializeScript</td>
<td>Initialise_Audit.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConversionScript</td>
<td>Convert_Audit.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Finished Jobs Database**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>DatabaseName</strong></th>
<th><strong>TotalAgility</strong></th>
<th><strong>Specify the name of the Finished Jobs database.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Create_Archive.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Drop_Archive.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>Convert_Archive.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DataLayer - TotalAgility_Documents Database**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>DatabaseName</strong></th>
<th><strong>TotalAgility_Documents</strong></th>
<th><strong>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Documents database.</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateScript</td>
<td>Repository2012_TablesCreate.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DropScript</td>
<td>Repository2012_Drop.sql</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>Repository2012_Convert.SQL</td>
<td>Only required for patch when there are SQL changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Security**

| WindowsAuthentication       | true                                                   | Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.                     |
|                            |                                                        | If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank. |
| UserName                    | empty                                                  |                                                                            |
| Password                    | empty                                                  |                                                                            |
| NewDatabase                 | false                                                  | Set to true to create new database.                                        |

**Reporting_Analytics Database**

| DatabaseName                 | TotalAgility_Reporting                                  | Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting database.                   |
| Server                       | server name                                            | Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.              |
| SqlScript                    |                                                        |                                                                            |
| CreateScript                 | Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_TablesCreate.sql          | Accept the default.                                                       |
| InitializeScript             | Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_Initialize.sql            | Accept the default.                                                       |
| Conversion Script            | empty                                                  | Only required for patch when SQL changes are needed.                      |

**Security**

| WindowsAuthentication       | true                                                   | Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.                     |
|                            |                                                        | If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the username and password blank. |
| UserName                    | empty                                                  |                                                                            |
| Password                    | empty                                                  |                                                                            |
| NewDatabase                 | false                                                  | Set to true to create new database.                                        |

**Reporting_Staging Database**

<p>| DatabaseName                 |                                                        |                                                                            |
| Server                       | server name                                            |                                                                            |
| SqlScript                    |                                                        |                                                                            |
| CreateScript                 | Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_TablesCreate.sql          | Accept the default.                                                       |
| InitializeScript             | Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_Initialize.sql            | Accept the default.                                                       |
| Conversion Script            | empty                                                  | Only required for patch when SQL changes are needed.                      |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Parameter</strong></th>
<th><strong>Default Value</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseName</td>
<td>TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging</td>
<td>Specify the name of the TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server</td>
<td>server name</td>
<td>Specify the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SqlScript</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conversion Script</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>Only required for patch when SQL changes are needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsAuthentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to use Windows credentials for logging in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If set to false, provide the username and password. Otherwise, leave the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>username and password blank.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NewDatabase</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set to true to create new database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Identity Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>username</td>
<td>Enter the user name of the Windows service account for the TotalAgility services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>password</td>
<td>Enter the password of the windows service account for the TotalAgility services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Accept the default. If set to true, the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services are created with LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When you set this parameter to true, databases should be created using SQL authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsNetworkServiceAccount</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services are created with the NT Authority\Network Service username.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> When you set this parameter to true, databases should be created using SQL authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>RTTS</td>
<td>Accept the default. <strong>Note</strong> When you install RTTS, it ignores the services. The services such as CoreworkerService, ImportService, ExportService are not installed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SslEnabled</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>You can set to true to enable https. See Configure for HTTPS Communication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformation Server Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Accept the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSConfigFile</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Specify the path to .ini file along with the name for Transformation Server to configure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Important</strong> If you provide the .ini file, the TransformationServerInfo settings are taken from the .ini file; the parameters mentioned in the SilentInstallConfig are ignored. See the .INI file Sample for the parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LogFile</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Transformation Server\Tslog.txt</td>
<td>Specify the location where the Transformation Server log file will be created. If the log file path is not valid, the Transformation Server installation fails. Example: C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Transformation Server\Tslog.txt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallLocation</td>
<td>For example, C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax\TotalAgility\TransformationServer</td>
<td>Specify the Transformation Server destination directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsServiceAccount</td>
<td>username</td>
<td>Enter the name of the user who will run the Transformation Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowsServicePassword</td>
<td>password</td>
<td>Enter the password for the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseSpecificPool</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set true to add this Transformation Server to a pool. Set false (or leave blank or assign any other value) to have Transformation Server process all activities regardless of pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PoolName</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>If you set UseSpecificPool=true, enter the Transformation Server pool name. If you leave the pool name empty, all activities are processed regardless of their pools.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLEnabled</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to enable online learning tasks on this Transformation Server instance. Set to false or any other value to disable online learning tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WcfPort</td>
<td>9001</td>
<td>Enter the port that is used by TotalAgility to communicate with Transformation Server during synchronous calls (such as fuzzy searches and pushed activities).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReservedSlots</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Enter the number of slots on this Transformation Server that are reserved for pushed activities and high-priority activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverrideDefSlots</td>
<td>empty (false)</td>
<td>To override the default number of processing slots for this Transformation Server, set this parameter to true. Any other value, including empty, is treated as false and the system automatically sets the default number of processing slots based on the system configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MaxSlots</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>If you set CPUSERVER_OVERRIDESLOTS to true, enter the number of processing slots for this Transformation Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnableSyncCalls</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Set to true to enable synchronous calls or false to disable these calls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpWestern</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for English, Spanish, Portuguese, French, and German.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpWesternExtended</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for Italian, Romanian, and Dutch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpExtended</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for Japanese, Chinese, and Korean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;InstallSynchronous&gt;</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Set true to install the Transformation Server in a synchronous mode. Specify the port number (default: 9001) for the Transformation Server service. The port number is stored in the TotalAgility Web.config file as an application setting: &lt;add key=&quot;TSExternalServicePortForSyncProcessing&quot; value=&quot;9001&quot; /&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;SiteRoot&gt;</td>
<td>Default Web Site</td>
<td>Install TotalAgility under a custom site that uses a non-standard port other than the standard ports (80 and 443). For example, create a custom site called &quot;testsite&quot; under IIS using the port number 85.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Save and close the file.

4. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.

5. Run `Setup.exe /Silent`.

The Real Time Transformation Server is installed. The Real Time Transformation Service sets up Transformation Server in a synchronous mode and configures the core and SDK APIs of TotalAgility which clients can invoke.

The system generates a log file that reports errors (if any).

The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

When automating the installation, if you run setup.exe from the command line, or run setup.exe as a silent installation, one of the codes returns to indicate the following:

- 0 = Success
- 1 = Success with warnings
- 2 = Failure

6. To ensure that the installation works as expected, perform the following steps:
   b. Locate the `TransformationServerExternalService_Binding` binding parameter and ensure that the `<transport ClientCredentialType>` value is set to Windows.
   c. Save and close the web configuration file.

See also:
- Silent installation for Database Only
- Silent installation for upgrading databases
- Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server
- Silent installation on a separate Web or Application server

#### Silent installation of multiple instances of Message Connectors

You can install up to three instances of Message Connector on a computer.

1. To install the first instance of Message Connector, before installing TotalAgility, set the value of `ImportService` parameter to true in `SilentInstallConfig.xml`. See Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server or Silent installation on a separate Web and Application server.
2. To install the second instance of Message Connector, run the following command on the Command Prompt:

```
msiexec /i <\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi> TRANSFORMS=:I02 MSINEWINSTANCE=1 KOFAX="<path>" <options>
```

Where, `<\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi>` is the path of TotalAgility setup folder.

In `<path>`, specify the installation path for second instance of Message Connector. `
KIC-ED\MC02` is appended to this path at the time of installation.

3. To install the third instance of Message Connector, run the following command on the Command Prompt:

```
msiexec /i <\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi> TRANSFORMS=:I03 MSINEWINSTANCE=1 KOFAX="<path>" <options>
```

Where, `<\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi>` is the path of TotalAgility setup folder.

In `<path>`, specify the installation path for third instance of Message Connector. `\KIC-ED\MC03` is appended to this path at the time of installation.

**Note** For second and third instances of message Connector, optionally, in `<options>` use the following command options:

- `qn` - silent installation
- `qb` - silent installation with elementary user interface (progress bar)
- `ALLUSERS=1` - install for all users

Following command assumes that TotalAgility setup folder is in the `C:` drive and Message Connector's second instance will be installed at `C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax`.

```
msiexec /i C:\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi TRANSFORMS=:I02 MSINEWINSTANCE=1 KOFAX="C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax" /qn /norestart ALLUSERS=1
```

**Perform a standard installation**

You can install TotalAgility using the standard installer wizard.

When you run the installation wizard for the Application Server or the Web/Application Server, based on the installation type selected, following items are installed:

- TotalAgility
- Kofax Import Connector
- Transformation Designer

**Note**

- Transformation Designer is installed only when the TransformationDesignerInstaller.exe is available in the TotalAgility installation folder.
- When you install Kofax TotalAgility from a network share, make sure the user has the Write permissions to the share; otherwise, the Import Connector will not get installed successfully.
Express installation

When installing TotalAgility using the standard installer wizard, do either of the following:

• Choose standard installation where you select your installation type from the available options, such as Databases Only, Web Server, Application Server and more.

• Express installation where TotalAgility is installed with all default settings which needs minimal user interaction. The express mode installs Combined Web Application server, SQL Express and Transformation Server. You can configure license server while installing TotalAgility or post installation.

Perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` on the installation media and run one of the following commands:
   • If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click Setup.exe and select Run as administrator.
   • If UAC is not enabled, run Setup.exe.

   The system starts the installation.

2. In the Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program window, click Next or press Enter to move to the next window.

   **Note** To exit the setup, click Cancel or press Esc.

3. In the Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click Next.

   The Install Option Type window opens.
4. Do either of the following:

**To proceed with the standard installation.**

| a. | Select **Standard**. |
| b. | Click **Next**. The **Type of Install** window opens. |
| c. | Select your installation type and follow the wizard instructions to complete the installation. |

**To install TotalAgility with minimum user interaction.**

| a. | Select **Express**. |
| b. | Leave the **Skip License** checkbox unselected to provide licensing details while installing TotalAgility. If you select this option and confirm to skip providing the licensing details, the Licensing window does not appear. You must configure the license server post installation. |
| c. | Click **Next**. The **Licensing** window opens if you have not selected the **Skip License** checkbox. |
| d. | Enter the License Server details and click **Next**. The **Credentials** window opens. |
| e. | Enter the username and password of the Windows account to run Kofax TotalAgility. The **Installation Progress** window displays the progress of installation. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products. |
| f. | Click **Finish**. |

Your installation is now complete. Review the Summary Panel for the installation report. If any errors occur during the installation, TotalAgility creates a log file on your desktop. Check this log file for error details.

### Standard installation of Database Only

1. Navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` on the installation media and run one of the following commands:
   - If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click `Setup.exe` and select **Run as administrator**.
   - If UAC is not enabled, run `Setup.exe`.

   The system starts the installation.

2. In the **Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program** window, click **Next** or press Enter to move to the next window.

   **Note** To exit the setup, click **Cancel** or press Esc.

3. In the **Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement** window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click **Next**.
   The **Install OptionType** window opens.
4. Select your installation option as **Standard** and click **Next**.
   For **Express** installation, see **Express installation**.

5. In the **Type of Install** window, select **Database Only** (default: Web/Application Server) and click **Next**.
   The **Databases** window opens.

6. Do one of the following:
   - By default **Install Databases** is selected. Click **Next** to install the databases.
   - If the database server already contains the same databases and you want to overwrite the existing databases, select the **Overwrite databases if they exist?** check box. The **Test connections** option becomes available. Click **Test connections** to test the database connections. Once the databases are successfully connected, click **OK**.
     
     **Note** If the database details are not valid, or if the database does not exist, connection to database fails.

   - If you want to provide the database server for each database do the following: enter a database name; click ellipsis for **Server** and choose the mode of database server; in the **Security** group, either use **Windows Authentication**, or select the SQL Server authentication providing the user name and password, and then click **OK**. If all the databases reside on the same server, select the **Apply these settings to all other Databases** check box.

7. Click **Next**.
   The **DB Connection Results** window opens and displays the results of connection to databases. If the connection to databases fails, the installation cannot be progressed. Click **Back** and make changes as needed.

   **Note** The **DB Connection Results** window opens only if the check box for "Install Databases" or "Overwrite databases if they exist?" is selected in the previous step.

8. Once the databases are successfully connected, click **Next**.
   The **Capture Binary Data Storage** window opens.

9. By default, the binary data such as capture documents, .NET Store DLLs and CCM Packs are stored in the TotalAgility database. You can use the preconfigured external cloud data storage services such as Amazon S3 or Windows Azure Blob Storage for saving and processing the binary data. The cloud services helps to reduce the SQL Server maintenance costs, delegate maintenance to external service and provide encryption.

   **Note** If you change the storage type to Azure/Amazon blob storage, the binary data is saved in the selected storage type. Once the cloud storage is enabled, you cannot turn it off later.

Select one of the following capture data storage types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL Server (default)</td>
<td>Stores capture data in the SQL Server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Storage type | Description
--- | ---
**Windows Azure Blob Storage** | Stores capture data in Azure Blob Storage service. Configure the following Cloud Account Settings:
- a. Enter the **Account Connection String** to connect to the Blob storage service.
- b. Enter the **Container Name** of the storage service.

**Amazon S3** | Configure the following Cloud Account Settings:
- a. Enter the **Access Key** to connect to the Amazon S3 storage service.
- b. Enter the **Secret Key**.
- c. On the **Region** list, select a predefined S3 region, for example Asia Pacific (Sydney). (Default: US East (Ohio))
- d. Enter the **Bucket Name**.

Bucket is a fundamental container in Amazon S3 for data storage.

10. Click **Next**.

The **Software Checks** window displays the list of detected software. TotalAgility requires certain software to be installed on your system before installing TotalAgility.

11. Review the **Detected Software** list and proceed as follows:

- If your system does not have all the required software, click **Cancel** to close the installer and install the software.
- If your system has all the required software, click **Next**.

The **Kofax TotalAgility Resource Credentials** window opens.

12. Enter the credentials (**Username**, **Password** (minimum 6 alphanumeric characters) and **Confirm** password) for the user to be created on installation.

By default, the username field displays the name of the logged on user. You can specify a different user name, as required.

13. Click **Next**.

The **Installation Review** window opens and displays the settings.

14. Review the settings and click **Next** to start the installation.

The **Installation Progress** window displays the progress of installation. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products.

The **Licensing** window opens.

15. To connect to the license server, do the following:

   a. In the **License Server** field, enter the location of the License Server.

   **Note** To connect to a shared License Server, enter the name or the IP address of a shared License Server.

   b. In the **Port Number** field, enter the port number on which the License Server listens.

   Alternatively, click **Skip** if you want to skip connecting to the License Server now but connect when launching TotalAgility.
16. Click Next.
   The Kofax TotalAgility Installation Complete window displays the installation summary.
   If any errors occur during the installation, TotalAgility creates a log file called TotalAgility.txt on your
   desktop. Check this log file for error details. The success or failure of installation is indicated in the
   event log.
17. Click Finish.
   Your installation is now complete.

Standard installation for upgrading databases

You can upgrade all the databases to the latest version of TotalAgility when TotalAgility is not installed
locally.

Note Upgrading databases prior to TotalAgility 7.4.0 is not supported.

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to \TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall and
   run one of the following commands:
   • If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click Setup.exe and select Run as administrator.
   • If UAC is not enabled, run Setup.exe.
   The system starts the installation.
2. In the Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program window, click Next or press Enter to move to the
   next window.
   Note To exit the setup, click Cancel or press Esc.
3. In the Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement
   and click Next.
4. Select your installation option as Standard and click Next.
   For Express installation, see Express installation.
5. In the Type of Install window, select Upgrade Databases (default: Web/Application Server).
   To import the Workspace package, select the check box for Import system Workspace package
   (default: Clear).
6. Click Next.
   The Databases window opens.
7. To specify the lower version databases to upgrade, do the following for the databases as needed:
   enter the database name to upgrade; click ellipsis for Server and choose the mode of database
   server; in the Security group, either use Windows Authentication, or select the SQL Server
   authentication providing the user name and password, and then click OK. If all the databases reside
   on the same server, select the Apply these settings to all other Databases check box.
8. Click Next.
   The Installation Review window opens.
9. Review the settings and click **Next** to start the installation.

The **Installation Progress** window displays the progress of installation. The setup upgrades TotalAgility databases.

If any errors occur during installation, TotalAgility creates a log file called Kofax TotalAgility.txt on your desktop. Check this log file for error details. The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

10. The Kofax TotalAgility Installation Complete window displays the summary for the installation. Click **Finish**.

Your installation is now complete.

**Standard installation of the Web Server**

1. On the TotalAgility installation media navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and run one of the following commands:
   - If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click Setup.exe and select **Run as administrator**.
   - If UAC is not enabled, run **Setup.exe**.

The system starts the installation.

2. In the **Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program** window, click **Next** or press Enter to move to the next window.

   **Note** To exit the setup, click **Cancel** or press Esc.

3. In the **Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement** window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click **Next**.

4. Select your installation option as **Standard** and click **Next**.

   For **Express** installation, see **Express installation**.

5. In the **Type of Install** window, select **Web Server** (default: Web/Application Server) and click **Next**.

   The **Destination** window opens.

6. Use the default installation folder or click **Browse** to select a different path, and click **Next**.

   The **Choose Server Location with Options** window opens.

7. In the **Server Name** field enter the name of your existing TotalAgility application server. The name must be a fully qualified, such as `<machinename>.<fullyqualifieddomainname>:<portnumber>`.

   **Note** The port number is only required if it is other than port 80.

8. To support SSL, select the **Support SSL** check box.

   **Note** The SSL option is only available if you have configured the https binding in IIS. See **Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS Communication**.

9. Click **Next**.

   The **Credentials** window opens.

10. Enter the credentials (Password and Confirm password) for the user who will run TotalAgility.
11. On the **Root Website to host TotalAgility Application** list, select the website to host the TotalAgility application. By default, the **Default Web Site** is selected.

   **Note** The websites added in IIS Manager appear on this list. To add a website in IIS Manager, click **Start > Run > Inetmgr > Sites > Add Web Site**.

12. Do either of the following for **Windows Authentication**:
   - To log on automatically to TotalAgility Designer and Workspace, keep the **Windows Authentication** check box selected (default).
   - To log on manually to TotalAgility Designer and Workspace, clear the **Windows Authentication** check box.

13. Click **Next**.
   The **Software Checks** window displays the list of detected software. TotalAgility requires certain software to be installed on your system before installing TotalAgility.

14. Review the **Detected Software** list and proceed as follows:
   - If your system does not have all the required software, click **Cancel** to close the installer and install the software.
   - If your system has all the required software, click **Next**. The **Install Options** window opens.

15. Click **Next**.
   The **Installation Review** window opens and displays the settings.

16. Review the settings and click **Next** start the installation.
   The **Installation Progress** window opens. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products.
   If any errors occur during installation, TotalAgility creates a log file called Kofax TotalAgility.txt on your desktop. Check this log file for error details. The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

17. Click **Finish**.
   Your installation is now complete.

See also:
- **Standard installation of Database Only**
- **Standard installation for upgrading databases**
- **Standard installation of the Application Server**
- **Standard installation of the Web and Application Server**
- **Standard installation of Real Time Transformation Server**

### Standard installation of the Application Server

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and run one of the following commands:
   - If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click Setup.exe and select **Run as administrator**.
   - If UAC is not enabled, run **Setup.exe**.
   The system starts the installation.
2. In the **Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program** window, click **Next** or press Enter to move to the next window.

   **Note** To exit the setup, click **Cancel** or press Esc.

3. In the **Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement** window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click **Next**.

4. Select your installation option as **Standard** and click **Next**.

   For **Express** installation, see [Express installation](#).

5. In the **Type of Install** window, select **Application Server** (default: Web/Application Server) and click **Next**.

   The **Application Server** window opens.

6. By default, the Windows Services and WCF Services (Core Services) are selected and installed. If you do not want to install any service, clear the check box for the service.

   The Windows Services include:
   
   - Core Services
   - Reporting Service
   - License Service (Primary license server or Backup license server)

   By default, the Primary server is selected. If the primary license server fails to connect, you can connect to the backup server by manually updating the license server configuration file, or run the Configuration Utility post TotalAgility installation to automatically update the setting. Also, after upgrading TotalAgility from versions prior to 7.7.0, you must reconfigure the license server by updating the settings to use the new licensing behavior. See [Update the settings for a license server](#).

7. Click **Next**.

   The **Destination** window opens.

8. Use the default installation folder for installing TotalAgility, or click **Browse** to select a different folder, and click **Next**.

   The **Credentials** window opens.

9. Enter the credentials (password and confirm password) for the user who will run TotalAgility.

   When you enter the credentials of a non-admin account, changes need to be made to ensure the Streaming Service will run.

   **Note** If the service account name ends with a $ (dollar), do not specify the password.

10. On the **Root Website to host TotalAgility Application** list, select the website to host the TotalAgility application. By default, the **Default Web Site** is selected.

    **Note** The websites added in IIS Manager appear on this list. To add a website in IIS Manager, click Start > Run > IIS Manager > Sites > Add Web Site.

11. To support SSL, select the **Support SSL** check box.

    **Note** The SSL option is only available if you have configured the https binding in IIS. See [Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS communication](#).

12. Click **Next**.

    The **Databases** window opens.
13. Do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the default settings.</td>
<td>Keep the <strong>Install Databases</strong> check box selected and follow Step 13.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| A database with the same name already exists, and you want to overwrite the existing database. | a. Select the **Overwrite databases if they exist?** check box. The **Test connections** option becomes available.  
   b. Click **Test connections**. A popup displays the database connection results. If the database details are not valid, or if the database does not exist, connection to database fails.  
   c. Click **Next**.  
   d. Click **Yes** to confirm overwriting databases.  
   **Note** |
| Point to an existing database on your local machine. | a. Clear the **Install Databases** and **Overwrite databases if they exist?** check boxes.  
   b. Enter a name for each database and follow Step 13. |
| Point to existing databases on a different machine. | a. Select the **Install Databases** and **Overwrite databases if they exist?** check boxes  
   b. For each database do the following:  
   1. Enter a database name.  
   2. Click ellipsis for **Server**; select the mode of database server.  
   3. In the **Security** group, either use **Windows Authentication**, or select the SQL Server authentication providing the user name and password, and then click **OK**.  
   4. If all the databases reside on the same server, select the **Apply these settings to all other Databases** check box.  
   **Note** |

**Note**  
- If Apppool is running under a System account, the System displays an error.  
- You must have a trusted account to interact with databases. Provide the SQL credentials and click **OK**.  
- If you install TotalAgility without any databases, you can use the Configuration Utility to point to the databases when they are available at a later a stage. See the *Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide*.  

---
14. Click Next.
   The DB Connection Results window opens and displays the results of connecting to databases.
   If the connection to databases fails, the installation cannot be progressed. Click Back and make
   changes as needed.

   **Note** The DB Connection Results window opens only if the check box for "Install Databases" or
   "Overwrite databases if they exist?" is selected in the previous step.

15. Once the databases are successfully connected, click Next.
   The Capture Binary Data Storage window opens.

16. By default, the binary data such as capture documents, .NET Store DLLs and CCM Packs are stored
    in the TotalAgility database. You can use the preconfigured external cloud data storage services
    such as Amazon S3 or Windows Azure Blob Storage for saving and processing the binary data. The
    cloud services helps to reduce the SQL Server maintenance costs, delegate maintenance to external
    service and provide encryption.

   **Note** If you change the storage type to Azure/Amazon blob storage, the binary data is saved in the
   selected storage type. Once the cloud storage is enabled, you cannot turn it off later.

Select one of the following capture data storage types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL Server (default)</td>
<td>Stores capture data in the SQL Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Azure Blob Storage</td>
<td>Stores capture data in Azure Blob Storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure the following Cloud Account Settings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>Enter the Account Connection String to connect to the Blob storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>Enter the Container Name of the storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon S3</td>
<td>Configure the following Cloud Account Settings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>Enter the Access Key to connect to the Amazon S3 storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>Enter the Secret Key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>On the Region list, select a predefined S3 region, for example Asia Pacific (Sydney). (Default: US East (Ohio))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d.</td>
<td>Enter the Bucket Name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bucket is a fundamental container in Amazon S3 for data storage.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17. Click Next.
   The Software Checks window opens. The system displays a list of required software based on
   services and databases selection and whether the required software is installed.

18. Review the Detected Software list and proceed as follows:
    - If your system does not have all the required software, click Cancel to close the installer and
      install the software.
    - If your system has all the required software, click Next. The Kofax TotalAgility Resource
      Credentials window opens
19. Enter the credentials (Username, Password) (minimum 6 alphanumeric characters) and Confirm password) for the user to be created on installation.

   By default, the username field displays the name of the logged on user. You can specify a different user name, as required.

20. Click Next.

   The Install Options window opens.

21. To automatically start the services, keep the Automatically Start Services check box selected, and click Next.

   The Installation Review window opens and displays the settings.

22. Click Next to start installation.

   The Installation Progress window opens. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products.

23. Click Next.

   The Licensing window opens.

24. Do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connect to the License Server</td>
<td>a. In the License Server field, enter the location of the License Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong> To connect to a shared License Server, enter the name or the IP address of a shared License Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. In the Port Number field, enter the port number on which the License Server listens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Click Next. The second Licensing window opens. Follow the next step.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   OR

   If you have selected to install databases manually (in Step 12).

   a. Click Skip.
   b. Click Finish.

25. Enter your TotalAgility Serial Number and Product code.

   The Serial Number and Product code appear by default, if the License Server is a shared license server.

26. The ID of the selected License Server appears in the Machine ID field.
27. To activate the license, select the license activation method:
   • **Automatic**: Use this option when internet connectivity is available. The license is activated online.
   • **Manual**: Use this option when there is no internet connectivity, or if automatic activation is not successful from the installer or license utility for your Kofax product. The Activation Code box is displayed where you can specify the activation code.

   a. To obtain the activation code:
      1. Enter the following URL in your browser:
         The Kofax Product License Activation page opens.
      2. Enter the **Serial Number** issued to you at the time of purchase. If you have a hardware key, the serial number (usually 7 characters) is printed on the key.
      3. Enter the email address where Kofax can send the information you need to activate the product license.
      4. Click **Next** to proceed with the activation process.
         
         **Note** Ignore the **Version** selection field if you do not have Kofax Capture or Ascent Capture.

      5. Copy and paste the **Activation Code** into the field on the **Licensing** window.
      6. Click **Activate** to activate the license, or click **Skip**. If you skip activating the license, a warning informs that you need to activate the license later.

   b. Once you get the activation code, copy the code.
   c. Paste the code in the **Activation Code** field on the **Licensing** window.
   d. Click **Activate** to activate the license, or click **Skip** to activate the license later. If you skip activating the license, the summary panel displays the warning that you need to activate the license later.
28. **Click Finish.**

Your installation is now complete.

After TotalAgility is installed, the installer prompts you to install the Kofax Transformation Server bundle.

**Note**

- If you want to install any further services, you should uninstall TotalAgility and reinstall by selecting the required services in the Application Server window.
- If any errors occur during installation, TotalAgility creates a log file called Kofax TotalAgility.txt at C:\Users\xxxx\AppData\Local\Temp (where xxxx is the currently logged on user). Check this log file for error details. The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

After you install TotalAgility, further configure TotalAgility to:

- Launch TotalAgility
- Integrate with SharePoint
- Integrate with Dynamics CRM
- Integrate with Dynamics AX
- Integrate with Microsoft Outlook
- Integrate with Micro Focus Content Manager

**Note** To view the TotalAgility version you installed, login to TotalAgility Designer and navigate to System > System settings. The version information is available at the bottom right corner of the System settings page. The last three digits correspond to the build number.

See also:

- Standard installation of Database Only
- Standard installation for upgrading databases
- Standard installation of the Application Server
- Standard installation of the Web Server
- Standard installation of the Web and Application Server
- Standard installation of Real Time Transformation Server

**Standard installation of the Web and Application Server**

This installation type installs the Web and Application servers on a single machine.

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and run one of the following commands:
   - If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click Setup.exe and select **Run as administrator**.
   - If UAC is not enabled, run **Setup.exe**.

   The system starts the installation.

2. In the **Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program** window, click **Next** or press Enter to move to the next window.

**Note** To exit the setup, click **Cancel** or press Esc.
3. In the Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click Next.

4. Select your installation option as Standard and click Next.
For Express installation, see Express installation.

5. In the Type of Install window, select Web/Application Server (default) and click Next.
The Application Server window opens.

6. By default, the Windows Services and WCF Services (Core Services) are selected and installed. If you do not want to install any service, clear the check box for the service.
The Windows Services include:
• Core Services
• Reporting Service
• License Service (Primary license server or Backup license server)
By default, the Primary server is selected. If the primary license server fails to connect, you can connect to the backup server by manually updating the license server configuration file, or run the Configuration Utility post TotalAgility installation to automatically update the setting. Also, after upgrading TotalAgility from versions prior to 7.7.0, you must reconfigure the license server by updating the settings to use the new licensing behavior. See Update the settings for a license server.

7. Click Next.
The Destination window opens.

8. Use the default installation folder or click Browse to select your desired location where TotalAgility will be installed.

9. Click Next.
The Credentials window opens.

10. Enter the credentials (Password and Confirm password) for the user who will run TotalAgility.

   Note If the service account name ends with a $ (dollar), do not specify the password.

11. On the Root Website to host TotalAgility Application list, select the website to host the TotalAgility application. By default, the Default Web Site is selected.

   Note The websites added in IIS Manager appear on this list. To add a website in IIS Manager, click Start > Run > Inetmgr > Sites > Add Web Site.

12. To support SSL, select the Support SSL check box. (Default: Clear)

   Note The SSL option is only available if you have configured the https binding in IIS. See Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS communication.

13. Do either of the following for Windows Authentication:
• To log on automatically to TotalAgility Designer and Workspace, keep the Windows Authentication check box selected (default).
• To log on manually to TotalAgility Designer and Workspace, clear the Windows Authentication check box.

14. Click Next.
The Databases window opens.
15. Do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Use the default settings. This means, new databases are installed.</td>
<td>Ensure the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. The <strong>Install Databases</strong> check box is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. The <strong>Overwrite databases if they exist?</strong> check box is clear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A database with the same name already exists, and you want to overwrite the existing database.</td>
<td>a. Select the <strong>Overwrite databases if they exist?</strong> check box. The <strong>Test connections</strong> option becomes available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Click <strong>Test connections</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A popup displays the database connection results. If the database details are not valid, or if the database does not exist, connection to database fails.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Click <strong>Next</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. Click <strong>Yes</strong> to confirm overwriting databases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point to an existing database on your local machine.</td>
<td>a. Clear the check boxes for <strong>Install Databases</strong> and <strong>Overwrite databases if they exist?</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Enter a name for each database and follow Step 13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point to existing databases on a different machine.</td>
<td>a. Clear the <strong>Install Databases</strong> and <strong>Overwrite databases if they exist?</strong> check boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. For each database do the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. Enter a name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Click ellipsis for <strong>Server</strong>; select the database server where the databases reside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. In the <strong>Security</strong> group, either use <strong>Windows Authentication</strong>, or select the SQL Server authentication providing the user name and password, and then click <strong>OK</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. If all the databases reside on the same server, select the <strong>Apply these settings to all other Databases</strong> check box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manually install the databases.</td>
<td>a. Run the setup.exe wizard to this screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Clear the <strong>Install Databases</strong> and <strong>Overwrite databases if they exist?</strong> check boxes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. <strong>Install the databases.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. After installing the databases, configure appropriate settings on this screen, and follow Step 13.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16. Click Next.

The DB Connection Results window opens and displays the results of connecting to databases. If the connection to databases fails, the installation cannot be progressed. Click Back and make changes as needed.

**Note** The DB Connection Results window opens only if the check box for "Install Databases" or "Overwrite databases if they exist?" is selected in the previous step.

17. Once the databases are successfully connected, click Next. The Capture Binary Data Storage window opens.

18. By default, the binary data such as capture documents, .NET Store DLLs and CCM Packs are stored in the TotalAgility database. You can use the preconfigured external cloud data storage services such as Amazon S3 or Windows Azure Blob Storage for saving and processing the binary data. The cloud services helps to reduce the SQL Server maintenance costs, delegate maintenance to external service and provide encryption.

**Note** If you change the storage type to Azure/Amazon blob storage, the binary data is saved in the selected storage type. Once the cloud storage is enabled, you cannot turn it off later.

Select one of the following capture data storage types:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SQL Server (default)</td>
<td>Stores capture data in the SQL Server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Azure Blob Storage</td>
<td>Stores capture data in Azure Blob Storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Configure the following Cloud Account Settings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Enter the Account Connection String to connect to the Blob service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Enter the Container Name of the storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon S3</td>
<td>Configure the following Cloud Account Settings:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Enter the Access Key to connect to the Amazon S3 storage service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Enter the Secret Key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. On the Region list, select a predefined S3 region, for example Asia Pacific (Sydney). (Default: US East (Ohio))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. Enter the Bucket Name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bucket is a fundamental container in Amazon S3 for data storage.
19. Click **Next**.
   If the provided storage account details are valid, the **Software Checks** window opens. The system displays a list of required software based on services and databases selection and whether the required software is installed. If the settings are invalid, the system displays a warning message. Click **Back** and provide the correct cloud settings.

20. Review the **Detected Software** list and proceed as follows:
   - If your system does not have all the required software, click **Cancel** to close the installer and install the software.
   - If your system has all the required software, click **Next**. The **Kofax TotalAgility Resource Credentials** window opens.

21. Enter the credentials (**Username**, **Password** (minimum 6 alphanumeric characters) and **Confirm** password) for the user to be created on installation.

   **Note** By default, the username field displays the name of the logged on user. You can specify a different user name, as required.

22. Click **Next**.
   The **Install Options** window opens.

23. To automatically start the services, keep the **Automatically Start Services** check box selected and click **Next**.
   The **Installation Review** window opens and displays the settings.

24. Review the settings and click **Next** to start the installation.
   The **Installation Progress** window displays the progress of installation. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products.

25. Do one of the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Connect to the License Server | a. In the **License Server** field, enter the location of the License Server.  
   
   **Note** To connect to a shared License Server, enter the name or the IP address of a shared License Server.  
   b. In the **Port Number** field, enter the port number on which the License Server listens.  
   c. Click **Next**. The second Licensing window opens. Follow the next step. |
| Skip connecting to the License Server now but connect when launching TotalAgility. OR  
If you have selected to install databases manually (in Step 13). | a. Click **Skip**.  
   b. Click **Finish**. |

26. Click **Next**.
   The **Installation Progress** window opens. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products.
27. Click Next. 
   The Licensing window opens.
28. To connect to the License Server:
   a. In the License Server field, enter the location of the License Server.
      
      Note To connect to a shared License Server, enter the name or the IP address of a shared License Server.

   b. In the Port Number field, enter the port number on which the License Server listens.
   c. Click Next. The second Licensing window opens.
      Alternatively, click Skip and proceed to Step 24 in the following cases:
      • If you want to skip connecting to the License Server now but connect when launching TotalAgility.
      • If you had selected to install databases manually (in Step 12).
29. Enter your TotalAgility Serial Number and Product Code.

   Note The Serial Number and Product Code appear by default if the License Server is a shared license server.

30. The ID of the selected License Server appears in the Machine ID field.
31. To activate the license, select the license activation method:
   • **Automatic**: Use this option when internet connectivity is available. The license is activated online.
   • **Manual**: Use this option when there is no internet connectivity, or if automatic activation is not successful from the installer or license utility for your Kofax product. The Activation Code box is displayed where you can specify the activation code.

   **a.** To obtain the activation code:

   1. Enter the following URL in your browser:
      
      
      The Kofax Product License Activation page opens.

   2. Enter the **Serial Number** issued to you at the time of purchase. If you have a hardware key, the serial number (usually 7 characters) is printed on the key.

   3. Enter the email address where Kofax can send the information you need to activate the product license.

   4. Click **Next** to proceed with the activation process.

      **Note** Ignore the "Version" selection field if you do not have Kofax Capture or Ascent Capture.

   5. Copy and paste the **Activation Code** into the field on the **Licensing** window.

   6. Click **Activate** to activate the license, or click **Skip**. If you skip activating the license, a warning informs that you need to activate the license later.

   **b.** Once you get the activation code, copy the code.

   **c.** Paste the code in the **Activation Code** field on the **Licensing** window.

   **d.** Click **Activate** to activate the license, or click **Skip** to activate the license later. If you skip activating the license, the summary panel displays the warning that you need to activate the license later.

   **Note** The license period starts once the license is activated. So you can skip activation during installation and only activate it when you are ready to use TotalAgility. You are required to activate the license when you log in to TotalAgility for the first time.
32. Click Finish. 
   Your installation is now complete.

   After TotalAgility is installed, the installer prompts you to install Transformation Server.

Note
- To install any further services, you must uninstall TotalAgility and reinstall by selecting the required services in the Application Server window.
- If any errors occur during the installation, TotalAgility creates a log file called Kofax TotalAgility.txt at C:\Users\xxxx\AppData\Local\Temp (where xxxx is the currently logged on user). Check this log file for error details. The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

After you install TotalAgility, further configure TotalAgility to:
- Launch TotalAgility
- Integrate with SharePoint
- Integrate with Dynamics CRM
- Integrate with Dynamics AX
- Integrate with Microsoft Outlook
- Integrate with Micro Focus Content Manager

Note To view the TotalAgility version you installed, login to TotalAgility Designer and navigate to System > System settings. The version information is available at the bottom right corner of the System settings page. The last three digits correspond to the build number.

See also:
- Standard installation of Database Only
- Standard installation for upgrading databases
- Standard installation of the Application Server
- Standard installation of the Web Server
- Standard installation of Real Time Transformation Server

Standard installation of Real Time Transformation Server

1. Navigate to \Totalagility\TotalAgilityInstall on the installation media and run one of the following commands:
   - If UAC (User Account Control) is enabled, right-click Setup.exe and select Run as administrator.
   - If UAC is not enabled, run Setup.exe.

   The system starts the installation.

2. In the Kofax TotalAgility Installation Program window, click Next or press Enter to move to the next window.

   Note To exit the setup, click Cancel or press Esc.

3. In the Kofax Inc. Software License Agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click Next.
4. Select your installation option as **Standard** and click **Next**. For **Express** installation, see **Express installation**.

5. In the **Type of Install** window, select **Real Time Transformation Service** and click **Next**. The **Destination** window opens.

6. Use the default installation folder or click **Browse** to select a different path and click **Next**. The **Credentials** window opens.

7. Enter the credentials (password and confirm password) for the user who will run TotalAgility.

   **Note** If the service account name ends with a $ (dollar), do not specify the password.

8. On the **Root Website to host TotalAgility Application** list, select the website to host the TotalAgility and Workspace application. By default, the **Default Web Site** is selected.

   **Note** The websites added in IIS Manager appear on this list. To add a website in IIS Manager, click **Start > Run > Inetmgr > Sites > Add Web Site**.

9. To support SSL, select the **Support SSL** check box.

   **Note** The SSL option is only available if you have configured the https binding in IIS. See **Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS communication**.

10. Do either of the following in **Windows Authentication** option:

    • To log on automatically to TotalAgility and Workspace, keep the **Windows Authentication** check box selected (default).

    • To log on manually to TotalAgility and Workspace, clear the **Windows Authentication** check box.

11. Click **Next**. The **Databases** window opens.

12. Use the default settings or do the following:

    • If you want to point to an existing database in your local machine, enter a name for each database and enter the credentials (password and confirm password) for the user to be created on installation.

    • If you want to point to the existing databases on a different machine, enter a name for each database; click ellipsis for **Server**; select the database server where the databases reside; in the **Security** group, either use **Windows Authentication**, or select the SQL Server authentication providing the user name and password, and then click **OK**. If all the databases reside on the same server, select the **Apply these settings to all other Databases** check box.

13. Click **Next**. The **Software Checks** window opens. The system displays a list of required software and whether the software is installed.

14. Review the **Detected Software** list and proceed as follows:

    • If your system does not have all the required software, click **Cancel** to close the installer and install the software.

    • If your system has all the required software, click **Next**. The **Installation Review** window opens.

15. Review the settings and click **Next**. The **Installation Progress** window opens. The setup installs the required files, databases, and other integrated products.
16. Click Finish.
Your installation is now complete.

**Note** If any errors occur during the installation, TotalAgility creates a log file called TotalAgility.txt on your desktop. Check this log file for error details. The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

17. To ensure that the installation works as expected, perform the following steps.
   b. Locate the TransformationServerExternalService_Binding binding parameter and ensure that the <transport clientCredentialType> value is set to Windows.
   c. Save and close Web.config.

See also:
- Standard installation of Database Only
- Standard installation for upgrading databases
- Standard installation of the Application Server
- Standard installation of the Web Server
- Standard installation of the Web and Application Server

### Upgrade Transformation Designer Help

The Transformation Designer help is not automatically upgraded when you install Kofax TotalAgility 7.8.0. As a result, you need to follow these manual steps to upgrade the documentation.

1. Navigate to the location where the Transformation Designer documentation is installed. By default, this is %ProgramData%/Kofax/Transformation. A directory called "Help" is displayed.
2. Rename the folder to "Help_7.8.0" or something similar. Leave the window open as you will need it again later.
3. In the Kofax TotalAgility 7.8.0 ISO file, navigate to Kofax TotalAgility\TotalAgility\Transformation Designer. A ZIP file called "Help.zip" is displayed.
4. Extract the "Help.zip" to %ProgramData%/Kofax/Transformation and ensure that the resulting directory is called "Help"
5. Open Transformation Designer and press F1 to open the help. The upgraded help is displayed. If the help does not display, ensure that the structure of the Help directory matches that of the "Help_7.8.0" directory and try again.
Perform TotalAgility installation in a Docker container

Overview

A Docker is an open platform for developing, shipping, and running applications. Docker enables you to separate an application from its infrastructure. Using Docker, you can manage your infrastructure in the same way you manage your applications.

Docker provides the ability to package and run an application such as TotalAgility in a loosely isolated environment called a Container. The isolation and security allows you to run many containers simultaneously on a given host using fewer resources than virtual machines.

You can deploy TotalAgility application into your production environment, as an independent container or an orchestrated set of containers. This works the same whether your production environment is a local datacenter, a cloud provider, or a hybrid of the two. You do not need to use the TotalAgility installation program when TotalAgility is deployed in a Docker container. Instead, TotalAgility is already installed and only the relevant configuration settings, such as database connection strings, are required when the container runs.

By default, all TotalAgility containers do not have limits for memory or CPU. SQL Server runs either on another Windows container or another machine, it does not run in the TotalAgility container.

Limitations

The following are the limitations:

• MSDTC is currently not supported by Microsoft on Docker containers. Therefore we cannot support Live and Finished jobs split out in separate databases.
• Export Connectors are not supported in a container.

Prerequisites

We recommend using a standalone server for your database (not a container). Therefore before running TotalAgility inside a container you will need to have the TotalAgility databases already setup and remotely accessible (using either IP address or fully qualified domain name).

To use this setup, you need the following configuration on the SQL server being used:

• Firewall should allow remote access to SQL Server.
• SQL Server itself should be configured to allow remote access with Mixed mode since the user is also allowed to access without Windows Authentication.
• TCP/IP protocols should be enabled for SQL Server. Note Named pipes protocol does not work.
Install Docker on the Windows server 2016 and higher

Set up Docker on your Windows server. This requires Windows Server 2016 or higher to support running a TotalAgility Windows container.

**Note** Image Quality Analysis, Mobile ID and Mobile Card Capture are not supported when you set up Docker on Windows Server 2016.

1. Open an elevated PowerShell command prompt, and type the following commands:

   ```powershell
   Install-Module DockerMsftProvider -Force
   Install-Package Docker -ProviderName DockerMsftProvider -Force
   ```

2. If a reboot is required, restart your instance using the following command:

   ```powershell
   (Install-WindowsFeature Containers).RestartNeeded
   ```

   If the output of this command is Yes, restart the server using the following command: **Restart-Computer**.

3. Test your Docker Engine - Enterprise installation by running the "docker info" command.

   ```bash
   docker info
   Containers: 1
   Running: 0
   Paused: 0
   Stopped: 1
   Images: 26
   Server Version: 18.09.3
   Storage Driver: windowsfilter
   Windows:
   Execution Driver: <not supported>
   Logging Driver: json-file
   Plugins:
   Volume: local
   Network: ics 12bridge 12tunnel nat null overlay transparent
   Kernel Version: 10.0 14393 (14393.2828.amd64fre.rs1_release_inmarket.190216-1457)
   OS Type: windows
   Architecture: x86_64
   CPUs: 4
   Total Memory: 10.04 GiB
   Name: HV-Docker-QA
   Docker Root Dir: C:\ProgramData\docker
   Debug Mode (client): false
   Debug Mode (server): false
   Registry: https://index.docker.io/v1/
   Labels: Insecure Registries: 127.0.0.0/8
   ```

4. Optional. NLP support for Transformation Server within Docker is not enabled by default. To make Docker work with NLP within the Transformation server, and to increase the default maximum size for the Docker container images, perform the following steps:

   a. Open daemon.json available at "C:\ProgramData\docker\config". If the file does not exist at that location, create the file.

   b. Append the following text to daemon.json:

   ```json
   {
   ```
c. Restart the Docker Engine service.

Use Image Quality Analysis, Mobile ID and Mobile Card Capture on Docker

To use Image Quality Analysis, Mobile ID and Mobile Card Capture in a container, Windows Server 2019 or higher must be used as a container host with the following Docker base container specified in the Docker file: mcr.microsoft.com/windows:1809

Make the following changes in the Docker file:

- Add the following line: RUN powershell "Set-ExecutionPolicy -ExecutionPolicy RemoteSigned" before the line, RUN powershell C:\KTA\PowershellScripts \ConfigureContainer.ps1

Make the following changes in the InstallWindowsFeatures.ps1 powershell script:

- Identify the following line:

  ```powershell
  Install-WindowsFeature -Name NET-Framework-Features -Source C:\kta\NET-Framework35-Features -Verbose
  ```

  (Install-WindowsFeature cmdlet is not supported in Windows 1809 image)

- Replace the preceding line with the following:

  ```powershell
  dism /Online /Add-Package /PackagePath:c:\kta\NET-Framework35-Features\Microsoft-Windows-InternetExplorer-Optional-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~en-US~.cab
  dism /Online /Add-Package /PackagePath:c:\kta\NET-Framework35-Features\microsoftwindows-internetexplorer-optional-package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~~.cab
  dism /Online /Add-Package /PackagePath:c:\kta\NET-Framework35-Features\Microsoft-Windows-NetFx3-OnDemand-Package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~.cab
  dism /Online /Add-Package /PackagePath:c:\kta\NET-Framework35-Features\microsoft-windows-netfx3-ondemand-package~31bf3856ad364e35~amd64~~.cab
  ```

**Note**

- Additionally, Mobile ID and Mobile Card Capture has a prerequisite for the VC++ 2013 x86 redistributable. This can be automatically downloaded and installed in the Docker file.
- Make sure that following dlls are present when you run Mobile ID and Mobile Card Capture applications (32 bit dll dependency) on Windows server 2016 or 2019 Docker images. Copy the 32-bit version of DLLs (avicap32.dll, avifil32.dll, msacm32.dll, msvfw32.dll) from the host's C:\Windows \SysWOW64 and paste the DLLs in the Docker container's C:\Windows\SysWOW64 folder. You must copy these DLLs to all containers running the Transformation Service.

Create a TotalAgility Docker container image

A container is defined by its image as well as any configuration options you provide when you create or start it.

To create a Docker image, you need internet connectivity because Docker uses the Microsoft "microsoft/aspnet" image as a base onto which the prerequisites are installed (from the base OS or from the Internet when any feature is not available on the image).
On-premise

To create a TotalAgility Docker image in an on-premise environment, perform the following steps.

1. Extract the contents of KofaxTotalAgility-7.8.0.ZIP to a `<source directory>`.
2. Create a new folder, `<workingdirectory>`.
   Your Docker commands will be run from this directory.
3. Copy the contents of `<source directory>\TotalAgility\Utilities\Docker` to `<working directory>\ContainerFiles\TotalAgility`.
4. Move the `<source directory>` folder to `<working directory>\ContainerFiles\TotalAgility`.
   The file structure should be as follows:
   `<working directory>\Dockerfile`
   `<working directory>\ContainerFiles\TotalAgility`
   `<working directory>\ContainerFiles\PowerShellScripts`
5. Update the parameters as needed for each container type. See Silent installation configuration.
6. To create the image, open a PowerShell window on the container host and run the following command:

   ```bash
   docker build -t <imagenamegoeshere> "<fullpathtoworkingdirectory>"
   ```

   **Note** Container host is the machine where Docker server is installed. Performance of a build command depends on the number of processors in the container host machine. The command may take approximately one hour to complete with a quad core processors configuration.

   **Example** The following command generates the image with the name "kofaxop" using the contents inside `C:\Docker\KofaxTotalAgility`:

   ```bash
   docker build -t kofaxop "C:\Docker\TotalAgility"
   ```

**Silent installation configuration in Docker**

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open SilentInstallConfig.xml using a text editor.
2. The following are the available Docker container types for this deployment and the required configuration parameters to be updated in SilentInstallConfig.xml.
   - Demo
   - Application Server (Core Services and Core Worker)
   - Web Server
   - Web Server and Application Server (Core Services and Core Worker)
   - Reporting Server
   - License Server
   - Transformation Server
   - Real Time Transformation Service

   **Note** You can create a Docker container with any combinations of App server, Web server, Reporting Server, Licensing Server and Transformation Server. Real Time Transformation Server (RTTS) is supported only in a dedicated Docker container.

### Demo

Update the following parameters for a Demo server installation.

**Note** Fix the line breaks if you copy and paste the code from this guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ServicesInstallOptions</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>The Export Service is not supported inside Docker containers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreServices</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DatabaseInformation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Identity Information</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Install Info</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>Set the authentication mode to Windows or Anonymous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>StartServices</strong></td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Services are started only after the container is running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Application Server (Core Services and Core Worker)

Update the following parameters for the Application server installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServicesInstallOptions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>The Export Service is not supported inside Docker containers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>ApplicationServer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>Set the authentication mode to Windows or Anonymous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Services are started only after the container is running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Web Server

Update the following parameters for the Web server installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>WebServer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>Set the authentication mode to Windows or Anonymous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Services are started only after the container is running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Web Server and Application Server (Core Services and Core Worker)

Update the following parameters for both Web and Application server installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServicesInstallOptions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>The Export Service is not supported inside Docker containers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallType</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>Set the authentication mode to Windows or Anonymous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Services are started only after the container is running.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reporting Server

Update the following parameters for the Reporting server installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServicesInstallOptions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>The Export Service is not supported inside Docker containers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**License Server**

Update the following parameters for a License server installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServicesInstallOptions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreServices</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DatabaseInformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallDatabases</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RunAsSystemAccount</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Type</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** After configuring and starting the container, licensing is not activated. You must activate licensing through the TotalAgility Designer.

**Transformation Server**

Update the following parameters for the Transformation server installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServicesInstallOptions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreWorkerService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExportService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>The Export Service is not supported inside Docker containers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ReportingService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LicenseService</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TransformationService</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoreServices</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Database Information**

| InstallDatabases        | false  | Skips installing databases as part of the Docker image installation.        |

**Identity Information**

| RunAsSystemAccount      | true   | Allows the AppPool and Kofax TotalAgility services to be created with the LocalSystem account. |

**Install Info**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>InstallType</th>
<th>ApplicationServer</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AuthenticationMode</td>
<td>Anonymous</td>
<td>Set the authentication mode to Windows or Anonymous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartServices</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Services are started only after the container is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpWestern</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for English, Spanish, Portuguese, French, and German.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpWesternExtended</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for Italian, Romanian, and Dutch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NlpExtended</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>If set to true, installs the Natural Language Processing language bundle for Japanese, Chinese, and Korean.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** NLP support for Transformation Server within Docker is not enabled by default. To make Docker work with NLP within the Transformation server, and to increase the default maximum size for the Docker container images, perform the following steps:

1. Open *daemon.json* available at "C:\ProgramData\docker\config". If the file does not exist at that location, create the file.
2. Append the following text to *daemon.json*:
   ```json
   {
     "storage-opts": ["size=50GB"]
   }
   ``
3. Restart the Docker Engine service.

**Real Time Transformation Service**

Update the following parameters for the Real Time Transformation Service installation.
### Install legacy wrapper on a Docker container

You can install the legacy wrappers through PowerShell scripts on a Docker container.

1. **On the installation media, navigate to** `\TotalAgility\Utilities\Docker\ContainerFiles\PowershellScripts\Startup.psl`.
2. **Open the Startup.psl in a text editor.**
3. **Uncomment the following snippet in this script file to install the legacy wrappers.**
   ```powershell
   #if (Test-path -Path 'C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\LegacyWrappers\WrapperInstaller.exe')
   #{
   #    'C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\LegacyWrappers\WrapperInstaller.exe'
   #}
   #```
4. **Save the changes.**

### Run a Docker container

A Docker container runs on any machine that supports the container's runtime environment. Applications are not required to be tied to the host operating system, so both the application environment and the underlying operating environment can be kept clean and minimal.

When a container stops running, changes to its state are not lost unless they are saved in persistent storage.

Before running a Docker container, the databases must already be set up (using Database only installation mode).

To use this setup, you need the following configuration on SQL Server:

- Firewall should allow remote access to SQL Server.
- SQL Server itself should be configured to allow remote access with Mixed mode since the user is also allowed access without Windows Authentication.
• TCP/IP protocols should be enabled for SQL Server.

Note Named pipes protocol does not work.

• To use split databases, the Main and Finished Jobs databases must point to the same database and reside on the same database server. Microsoft does not support MSDTC on Docker containers.

Note Verify that you are able to remotely connect to the database server where the databases were set up using SQL Server Management Studio that uses the IP address. The verification ensures that the Docker containers are connected to the database server without any issues.

1. Generate "dockersettings.env" using Configuration Utility in Docker mode. The file will be used later for the container initialization. Refer the Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide for more information.

Note The authentication mode for accessing TotalAgility can be set using the Configuration Utility.

2. Container access can be limited to the container host or can be port forwarded for global access. Enable the required exposed port number in the firewall settings for the host machine.

3. For non-Windows authentication:
   a. The following command brings up a container using the kofaxop image. Kofax TotalAgility settings are applied from dockersettings.env without Windows authentication. Port 80 from the container is forwarded to port 5000 on the container host.
      
      docker run -d --hostname "opdemo2" --name "opdemo2" --env-file "C:\Docker\TotalAgility\dockersettings.env" -p 5000:80 kofaxop
      
      b. The following command brings up a container using the kofaxop image. Kofax TotalAgility settings are applied from dockersettings.env without Windows authentication.
      
      docker run -d --hostname "opdemo1" --name "opdemo1" --env-file "C:\Docker\TotalAgility\dockersettings.env" kofaxop

4. To enable licensing in a container, you must add "-p 3581:3581" to the "docker run" command. For example:

    docker run -d --hostname "opdemo2" --name "opdemo2" --env-file "C:\Docker\TotalAgility\dockersettings.env" -p 5000:80 -p 3581:3581 kofaxop

Note If running the License Server in a container, the associated license serial number must be activated before the Kofax TotalAgility Core Worker service can be started.

5. Use "docker exec -it <container id\name goes here> powershell" to attach to a powershell session on the created container.

For example, the docker exec -it opdemo3 powershell will bring up a powershell session inside the container with opdemo3 as the container name.
6. To open a port number required for Message Connector, you must add "-p 5003:25086" to the "docker run" command. For example:

docker run -d --hostname "opdemo2" --name "opdemo2" --env-file "C:\Docker \TotalAgility\dockersettings.env" -p 5000:80 -p 5003:25086 kofaxop

**Note** 5003 is an example forwarded port number for Message Connector. Use the port number that you have configured for Message Connector. Similarly, you can configure port numbers for other instances of Message Connector.

If running TotalAgility containers on multiple hosts, it is recommended to use Docker Swarm or Kubernetes orchestrators that have a built-in DNS server to resolve container DNSs across multiple hosts.

If not using a container orchestrator and using Transformation Server synchronous processing, the TRANS_SERVER_INSTANCE database table should be manually updated to contain the IP URL of the host running the Transformation Server container. Transformation Server service runs on port 9001 by default; however, the port can be reconfigured using the Configuration utility. This port needs to be exposed in order to be used by App container hosted on the different host machine. Use additional switch `-p TS Port :9001` while running a Transformation Server container.

### Access TotalAgility

After you connect to the Docker container and verify that all services are in their expected state, use the following URLs to access TotalAgility outside the container host with the port forwarded setup:

- http://<ipaddressofthecontainerhost>:<exposedportofthecontainerhost>/TotalAgility/Designer
- http://<ipaddressofthecontainerhost>:<exposedportofthecontainerhost>/TotalAgility/Forms

### For containers hosting IIS – TotalAgility website

Due to different default behavior with case-insensitive URL resolution within Docker containers, it is necessary to perform extra configuration to ensure the TotalAgility website can be resolved in a case insensitive way.

When you configure the container for the Designer / Workspace, we recommend that you use a VirtualHost file to configure the port and URI exposure through the host OS before you access the URL. You may also consider using a rewrite rule to ensure that any URL access is redirected to a lowercase representation.

As per RFC 2616, "...a client SHOULD use a case-sensitive octet-by-octet comparison of the entire URLs...Comparisons of host names MUST be case-insensitive."

The Docker daemon and cache hold case-sensitive resolutions of the URL, which can cause issues if the case of the URL is changed prior to first access. This caching issue occurs as a result of Docker's use of WSL v1 and should be resolved in WSL v2. Within Docker you cannot expose the same container port for multiple protocols, and having previously cached a case-sensitive URL, the cache must be cleared to replace with the lowercase URL.
Access Message Connector

To access the Message Connector within the container host or from outside the host, perform the following steps.

1. Use the following URL: http://DockerServerIP:5003/en/file/index.html
   Where DockerServerIP is the IP of the Docker Container host and 5003 is the configured forwarded port number to access the Message Connector. Use the forwarded port number you have configured for Message Connector.
   The Message Connector Monitor appears.

2. To access Message Connector configuration, click the Configuration Tool.
   The Message Connector Configuration tool appears.

3. Make the necessary configuration changes and save.

4. Optionally, to restart the Message Connector service, click the Restart service button.
   To stop and restart Message Connector service from the Docker container, use the following commands: Start-service KIC-ED-MC Stop-service KIC-ED-MC

Additional information

This table includes some useful Docker commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Docker command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>docker images</td>
<td>Gets the list of all Docker images currently available on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docker ps -a</td>
<td>Gets a list of all containers available on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docker start &lt;containerID&gt;</td>
<td>Starts the container with the ID &lt;containerID&gt; on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docker stop &lt;containerID&gt;</td>
<td>Stops the container with the ID &lt;containerID&gt; on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docker rm &lt;containerID&gt;</td>
<td>Deletes the container with the ID &lt;containerID&gt; on the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>docker rmi &lt;imagename&gt;</td>
<td>Deletes the image with the ID &lt;imagename&gt; on the server. Deletion is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>successful only if no child containers use this image.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| docker inspect -f "
   \{.NetworkSettings.Networks.nat.IPAddress \}"
   <containerID>                     | Gets the IP address of the container with the ID <containerID>.        |
| docker cp "<containerID>:/
   <fullfilepathoncontainer>"
   "<pathfolderonserver>"            | Copies a file from the container to the server.                        |
| docker cp "<fullfilepathonserver>"
   "<containerID>:
   <fullfilepathoncontainer>"        | Copies a file from server to the container.                            |
| docker logs <containerID>           | Displays all logs for a particular container.                          |
| docker logs - n <containerID>       | Displays the last "n" logs for a particular container.                 |
| type <FQDN of text file>            | Displays the content of text file within a powershell instance.        |
| Get-Process                         | Gets the list of all processes.                                       |
| Get-Service                         | Gets the list of all services (running and stopped).                  |
| start-service ServiceNameGoesHere   | Starts a particular service.                                          |
| Stop-service ServiceNameGoesHere     | Stops a particular service.                                           |
### Docker command

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Get-WMIObject Win32_Service</td>
<td>Gets a list of all services with some additional columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get-EventLog -LogName Application -newest 10</td>
<td>Gets the last 10 application logs from the event viewer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>import-module webadministration</td>
<td>Runs before the following commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get-iisapppool</td>
<td>Gets the name of the Application pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get-itemProperty -path IIS:APPPOOLS\TotalAgilityAppPool</td>
<td>Gets the identity information for the Application pool.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using secrets

If you are using Kubernetes secrets to store sensitive information, such as database connection string, passwords and more, you must do the following changes before building the Docker images and deploying to Kubernetes. For example, consider using the MainDBConnectionString application setting as the secret.

#### Kubernetes secrets

**If using secrets as volumes**

1. Create a secret `<maindbsecret>` in Kubernetes that contains the MainDBConnectionString details. Refer to the Kubernetes documentation on secrets to create a secret.

2. On the Docker container installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\Utilities\Docker\ContainerFiles\PowershellScripts\`. Replace the line "$appSetting.value = $_.Value;" with the following lines which will check for 'maindbconnectionstring' setting and update its value in all the Kofax TotalAgility configuration files with the contents of the `<maindbsecret>` file mounted in a `<target path>`.

   ```powershell
   if($appSetting.key -eq "<MainDBConnectionString>")
   {
       $dbconnstring = (Get-Content "<target path>\<maindbsecret>") -as [string];
       if($dbconnstring -ne $null)
       {
           $appSetting.value = $dbconnstring;
       }  
       else
       {
           $appSetting.value = $_.Value;
       }
   }
   ```

   **Note** All the corresponding MainDBConnectionString values in the DockerSettings.env no longer needs to be provided as it is pulled from the secrets.

3. Save the Changes.

4. Similarly, update the `UpdateConfigAppSettings.ps1` script file for other application settings as needed.
5. Modify the Pod definition to add a volume `<maindbvol>` along with the `<maindbsecret>` to a chosen `<target path>`, for example, `<kta/maindb/>` in the container. Refer to the Kubernetes documentation on secrets to add a volume.

6. When the pod is deployed, this should create a secret file `<maindbsecret>` which contains the connection string value under the path `c:\kta\maindb\` in the container and also update the corresponding TotalAgility configuration file settings with the secret value.

If using secrets as environmental variables

1. Create a secret `<maindbsecret>` in Kubernetes that contains the MainDBConnectionString details. Refer to the Kubernetes documentation on secrets to create a secret.

2. Modify the Pod definition to add an environmental variable `<env variable name>` for the secret `<maindbsecret>`. The `<env variable name>` must be same as in dockerSettings.env, for example, "KTA_Agility.Server.Web--web.config_MainDBConnectionString". This should set the environment variable "KTA_Agility.Server.Web--web.config_MainDBConnectionString" with the value of the secret `<maindbsecret>` which contains the connection string value, once the pod is deployed. Refer to Kubernetes documentation on secrets to add as environment variable.

3. Similarly multiple environment variables can be added to the pod definition that needs to get the value form a secret. No changes are needed to the script files.

Docker Secrets

If you are using Docker secrets to store sensitive information, it is only available in the Swarm mode; so the standalone containers cannot use this feature.

**Note** The following changes need to be made before building the Docker images and deploying to swarm.

1. Create a secret `<maindbsecret>` in the swarm that contains the MainDBConnectionString details. Refer to the Docker documentation on Docker secrets to create a secret.

2. On the Docker container installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\Utilities\Docker\ContainerFiles\PowershellScripts` and update the `UpdateConfigAppSettings.ps1` Powershell script file. Replace the line " $appSetting.value = $_.Value; " with the following lines which will check for 'maindbconnectionstring' setting and update its value in all the Kofax TotalAgility configuration files with the contents of the `<maindbsecret>` file located in a default target location (For windows containers, the default target is under 'C:\ProgramData\Docker\secrets'):

   ```powershell
   if($appSetting.key -eq "<MainDBConnectionString>")
   {
   $dbconnstring = (Get-Content "<target location><maindbsecret>") -as [string];
   if($dbconnstring -ne $null)
   {
   $appSetting.value = $dbconnstring;
   }
   else
   {
   $appSetting.value = $_.Value;
   ```
3. Save the Changes. Similarly, you can update the `UpdateConfigAppSettings.ps1` script file for other application settings as needed.

4. Create/update a Docker service and provide access to the `<maindbsecret>` secret along with the Docker environment file. This should create a secret file `<maindbsecret>` in the container and also update corresponding settings of the Kofax TotalAgility configuration files with the secret value. Refer to the Docker documentation on Docker secrets to create a service.

**Import SSL certificate on the container**

You can import a custom SSL certificate for use by TotalAgility on a Docker container.

You can import password-protected certificates with a private key. See SSL Support Desk for more information on certificate export.

1. Create a new folder, such as “HostMachineFolder” on the host machine.

2. Copy the certificate file, such as `CertificateName.pfx` to the newly created folder (HostMachineFolder).

3. You can pass the certificate password to the container as text or in a file. The file can be passed to the container as a secret (if using Docker compose, Kubernetes, and so on) or as a mapped volume. To pass password file using mapped volume, do the following:
   a. Create new text file, such as `password.txt` in the HostMachineFolder.
   b. Open the newly created file and enter the certificate’s password in the first line of the file.
   c. Save the file and ensure to that you change the file attribute to hidden.

4. Create a Docker container using the "docker run" command as documented in previous sections with two additional switches, "-v" and "-e".
   a. 
   
   b. 
   
   c. Following are the examples of the "docker run" command with new -v and -e:

   For on-premise:
   ```
   - docker run --env-file "C:\Docker\TotalAgility\TotalAgility\dokersettings.env" -e SSL_CERT_PASSWORD="password" -e SSL_CERT_PATH="HostMachineFolder\CertificateName.pfx" -v "HostMachineFolder:ContainerFolder" -p 5000:443 -d kofax/kta_771
   - docker run --env-file "C:\Docker\TotalAgility\dokersettings.env" -e KTA_SSL_CERT_PASSWORD_PATH="C:\folder\password.txt" 
   ```
KTA_SSL_CERT_PATH="C:\folder\Cert.pfx" -v "C:\folder:C:\folder2" -p 5000:443 -d kofax/kta_771

d. Replace HostMachineFolder with the actual certificate path on the host machine.

e. Replace the CertificateName with the actual certificate name.

f. Replace the ContainerFolder with the actual folderpath and name on the container (folder will be created).

**Note** Ensure that folder paths or names do not have spaces.

Use Windows authentication with IIS and SQL server

Use GSMA to configure Windows authentication for Docker containers.

**Use Windows authentication with IIS and SQL server**

Docker containers cannot join an Active Directory domain. However, when running a container, you can specify that it should use a specific AD Group Managed Service Account (gMSA) for any local Windows services and IIS Application pool in the container that are configured to run as LocalSystem or NetworkService accounts.

When running as these accounts in the container, the services and App pool will automatically get the access rights of the gMSA to allow them to use Windows authentication to access other VMs/machines outside of the container.

When setting up a TotalAgility Docker container to use Windows authentication, you must modify the SilentInstallConfig.xml file to specify LocalSystem as the account to use for all TotalAgility services and IIS App pool. This account will be used when the container is built.

Ensure the following prerequisites are met:

- Add Docker server, SQL server machine and machines that will use gMSA under required domain controller.
- Add these machines in the Active Directory under "Computer" folder.
- Create a Global Security group, such as " ContainerHostGroupName" in the Active Directory under "Builtin" folder.
- Add Docker server, SQL server machine or machines that will use gMSA as members to the new group.

Perform the following steps to use Windows authentication with IIS and SQL server.

1. Create the KDS root key.
   This key is used by the KDS service on DCs (along with other information) to generate passwords. You can generate this key only once per domain.
   a. Login to domain controller and execute the following commands:
      
      ```
      Import-module ActiveDirectory
      Add-KdsRootKey -EffectiveImmediately
      ```
   b. Verify your key using the following command:
      
      ```
      Get-KdsRootKey
      ```
2. Create a gMSA account.
   a. Login to domain controller and execute the following command:

      GMSA account name : containerhost
      Domain name: TotalAgilityexample.com

      New-ADServiceAccount -Name containerhost -DNSHostName TotalAgilityexample.com
      -PrincipalsAllowedToRetrieveManagedPassword "Domain Controllers",
      "domain admins", "CN= ContainerHostGroupName,CN=Builtin, DC=
      TotalAgilityexample, DC=COM" -KerberosEncryptionType RC4, AES128, AES256

      b. Verify the new gMSA account using the following command:

         Get - ADServiceAccount - Identity containerhost

      c. A new gMSA object appears in your domain’s Managed Service Account.

3. Add gMSA account to the servers you want to use.
   a. Open the Active directory Admin Center and go to Managed service accounts.
   b. Select the gMSA account and click Properties.
   c. Select the security and click Add.
   d. Select the computers where you want to use gMSA such as Docker server and SQL server machine.
   e. Reboot Domain controller for the changes to take effect.
   f. Reboot the computers that will be using gMSA.

4. Install gMSA Account on servers.
   a. Login to the machine that will be used as Docker server.
   b. If Active Directory features are not available, execute the following command:

      Enable-WindowsOptionalFeature -FeatureName ActiveDirectory-Powershell
      -online -all

   c. To install and test gMSA, execute the following commands:

      // check whether you are able to account
      Get-ADServiceAccount -Identity containerhost //Name of GMSA

      // install on machine
      Install-ADServiceAccount -Identity containerhost

      // test
      Test-AdServiceAccount -Identity containerhost

      If the output does not contain any errors, it will look like as follows:

      Path : ...
      Online : True
      RestartNeeded : False
      DistinguishedName : CN=containerhost,CN=Managed Service Accounts, DC=local
      Enabled : True
      Name: containerhost
      objectClass : msDs-GroupManagedServiceAccount
      ObjectGUID : containerhost$
      SamAccountName : containerhost$
      SID : S-1-5-21-3914853822-719528391-929614657-1606
      UserPrincipalName : ...
5. Associate Service Principal Name with the gMSA:
   a. This step is required for kerberos authentication to work and for automatic login in Chrome and
      Internet Explorer browsers. If you skip this step, authentication still works but will always prompt
      for username/password since it will fallback to NTLM.
      GMSA account: containerhost
      Domain name: TotalAgilityexample .com
      Container host machine: machine1
   b. Login to domain controller and execute the following command:

   ```
   setspn -c -s HTTP/ machine1 TotalAgilityexample \ containerhost
   setspn -c -s HTTP/ machine1. TotalAgilityexample.com TotalAgilityexample \ containerhost
   ```

6. To test Active Directory access on the container host, run the following command on the host machine: `nltest /parentdomain`
   At this point, if no errors occurs, the LocalSystem account on the container will be a proxy for the
   configured gMSA account. Any process run as the LocalSystem principal on the container will
   appear to be the GMSA principal to all assets on the Active Directory domain.

7. Generate credential specifications file which must be passed to the Docker during container creation to utilize this service account. Run the following commands to downloads module which will create this file from Microsoft github account and will create a JSON file containing required data.

   ```
   GMSA account: containerhost
   Domain name: TotalAgilityexample.com
   Invoke-WebRequest "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/Microsoft/Virtualization-Documentation/live/windows-server-container-tools/ServiceAccounts/CredentialSpec.psm1" -UseBasicParsing -OutFile $env:TEMP\cred.psm1
   import-module $env:temp\cred.psm1
   New-CredentialSpec -Name win -AccountName containerhost
   #This will return location and name of JSON file
   Get-CredentialSpec
   Name Path
   ---- ----
   win C:\ProgramData\docker\CredentialSpecs\win.json
   ```

8. For SQL server configuration to allow gMSA, enter the gMSA account as "containerhost" and domain name as "TotalAgilityexample.com" and run the following SQL commands on your SQL database:

   ```
   CREATE LOGIN " TotalAgilityexample \ containerhost$" FROM WINDOWS
   GO
   CREATE USER containerhost FOR LOGIN " TotalAgilityexample \ containerhost$"
   GO
   EXEC sp_addrolemember 'db_datareader', containerhost
   EXEC sp_addrolemember 'db_datawriter', containerhost
   ```

9. If there are no errors, the LocalSystem account on the container will be a proxy for the configured gMSA account. Any process run as the LocalSystem principal on the container will appear to be the
gMSA principal to all assets on the Active Directory domain. To test Active Directory access on the container, run the following command on the container: `nltest /parentdomain`

**Install TotalAgility on a non-standard port**

To install TotalAgility on a non-standard port, you must first edit bindings to specify the port number, and update the base address and restart the streaming service.

**Edit bindings**

1. Click `Start > Run > InetMgr > Sites > Default Web Site`. By default, the **Default Web Site** is selected.
2. Right click on the Default Website and click **Edit Bindings**.
3. Select the default port 80 and click **Edit**.
4. In the **Edit Site Binding** window, change the port number to 81 and click **OK**.
5. Install Kofax TotalAgility. See **TotalAgility installation**.
6. Enter the following URL in your browser and change the port number to 81 in the URL to logon. 
   `http://ServerName:81/TotalAgility/forms/GeneralWorkQueue.form`

**Update the base address**

You can edit the base address setting either manually or using the Configuration Utility.

**Manually**

1. On the **TotalAgility installation media**, open the Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config file available at \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\bin> and change the base address section.

   ```xml
   <baseAddresses>
   <add baseAddress="http://<ServerName>.<DomainName>:<non default port>/TotalAgility/Services/Sdk/StreamingService.svc" />
   </baseAddresses>
   ```

2. Similarly, change the base address section in the Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config file available at \TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService>.

   ```xml
   <baseAddresses>
   <add baseAddress="http://<ServerName>.<DomainName>:<non default port>/TotalAgility/Services/Core/StreamingService.svc" />
   </baseAddresses>
   ```

3. The streaming service hosts an http server. If the Streaming service and Package streaming service are running under a non-admin account on a non-standard port, you need to reserve a namespace
for them. To do so, on the Command Prompt, run the following command using an account that has administrator rights on the local machine:

- For StreamingService.svc:

  netsh http add urlacl url=http://+:<non default port>/TotalAgility/Services/Sdk/StreamingService.svc user=%domainuser%

- For the Web server and Combined Web App server installations:

  netsh http add urlacl url=http://+:<non default port>/TotalAgility/Services/Core/StreamingService.svc user=%domainuser%

- For the Application server installation:

  netsh http add urlacl url=http://+:<non default port>/TotalAgility/Services/Sdk/PackageStreamingService.svc user=%domainuser%

If the aforementioned URLs are not reserved, the Streaming service will not start when using a non-admin service account.

Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration utility and update the base address property for the streaming service. The streaming service must be restarted for the change to take effect. Restart the Streaming Service

Restart the Streaming Service

Once the base address is changed or the command to reserve the namespace is completed, restart the Streaming service.

Install databases manually

The following procedure describes installing databases manually.

Note the following:

- You can either create a single database for Main, Audit and Finished databases or create separate Main, Audit and Finished databases.

- By default, the Document Repository is installed into its own database. However, you can create tables for the document repository within the main TotalAgility database by running the scripts.

- If the Application Server and databases are installed on the same server, it is not required to start MSDTC. When you have scaled out (separate) TotalAgility databases such as Main and Archive, you require the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MSDTC). By default, the security configuration for the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator is set to not allow network transactions. As the MSDTC is responsible for coordinating transactions that span multiple resource managers, such as databases, message queues, and file systems you must configure MSDTC if your
databases are split and the TotalAgility application reside on separate servers. In this case, do the following to select the settings:

2. Click Component Services.
   The Component Services window appears.
3. In the left panel, under Console Root expand the Component Services, navigate to Computers > My Computer > Distributed Transaction Coordinator and select Local DTC.
4. From the Local DTC context menu, select Properties.
5. In the Local DTC Properties window, click the Security tab.
6. Under Security Settings, select the checkboxes for Network DTC Access and Enable SNA LU 6.2 Transactions (if JDBC is used).
7. Select Enable SNA LU 6.2 Transactions if required. Ensure that Microsoft SNA server is installed and SNA resources are correctly configured.
8. Under Transaction Manager Communication, select the checkboxes for Allow Inbound and Allow Outbound (configure the desired level of security for authentication).

   - After the settings are completed, start the Distributed Transaction Coordinator service. To start MSDTC manually, on the Command Prompt window, run the following command: `net start msdtc`.
   Alternatively, at Run, type `Services.msc` and press Enter. Right-click the Distributed Transaction Coordinator service and click Start.

   **Note** The remote SQL server will also require MSDTC configuration. In addition to the above Security Settings, select Allow Remote Clients. The Allow Remote Administration setting is optional.

If there are additional network and security rules required for TotalAgility to communicate, there are a number of Microsoft tools that can help you troubleshoot some common issues. These tools are not Kofax products and carry no warranty or liability.

- **DTCTester**: This tool verifies the transactions between two computers if SQL Server is installed on one computer, using ODBC to verify transaction support against an SQL Server database.
- **DTCPing**: This tool verifies transaction support between two computers if SQL Server is not installed on either computer. The DTCPing tool must be run on both the client and server computers.
- TotalAgility license tables are installed by running the Create_KLS_OnPremise.sql.

Do the following to install databases manually:

1. Ensure that you create the following databases:
   - TotalAgility
   - Finished Jobs
   - Audit
   - TotalAgility_Reporting
   - TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging
2. Edit the Initialise_Main.sql script by using the comments in the script. For example, update the details of the user who will log on to TotalAgility initially by editing the following:
   a. `@NTNAME = 'INSTALL_NTUSERID'`, where the User Domain and User ID replaces INSTALL_NTUSERID. For example, 'DomainName\USERA'
   b. `@FULLNAME = 'INSTALL_FULLNAME'`, where the User name replaces INSTALL_FULLNAME. For example, 'USER A'

3. Run the scripts in the following order across databases and follow the instructions inside each script.
   a. Main(Create, Initialise)
      Run the following scripts on the Main database:
      - Create_Main.sql
      - Initialise_Main.sql
      - Create_Forms.sql
      - Initialise_Forms.sql
      - Create_KFS.sql
      - Initialise_KFS.sql
      - LicenseScripts\Create_KLS_OnPremise.sql
   b. Finished Jobs(Create)
      Run the following script on the Finished Jobs database (can exist on the Main database):
      - Create_Archive.sql
   c. Audit(Create, Initialise)
      Run the following scripts on the Audit database (can exist on the Main database):
      - Create_Audit.sql
      - Initialise_Audit.sql

4. The following scripts are used for installing reporting databases manually.
   - Scripts for creating the Staging database.
     - Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.Staging.SQL_TablesCreate.sql
     - Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.Staging.SQL_Initialize.sql
   - Scripts for creating the Reporting database.
     - Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_TablesCreate.sql
     - Kofax.Reporting.Analytics.SQL_Initialize.sql

   **Note** Before running these scripts, verify that a compatible database server is already installed. The Reporting tables must be in the default schema.

5. In the Installation wizard, in the **Databases** window, do the following:
   a. Clear the check boxes for **Install Databases** and **Overwrite databases if they exist**.
   b. Rename the databases under Database Name to match with the name given while creating databases manually.
      Change the name of the Data Layer database to either Repository2012 or the name given while creating the databases.
   c. Click **Next**. Ensure the installation completes before updating the configuration files.
6. You can edit the value of the database connections in the Web.config manually or run the Configuration Utility available on the installation media.
   • Open Web.config available at \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web. In the appSettings section, update the value of the following database connections:
     • MainDBConnectionString
     • ArchiveDBConnectionString
     • AuditDBConnectionString
     • ReportingMainDBConnectionString
     • ReportingStagingDBConnectionString

     **Note** The database should point to the machine where Kofax TotalAgility is installed.

     • Run the Configuration Utility and modify the values of the preceding database connections available on the Common settings tab.

7. To modify the value of database connections in Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config, do either of the following:
   • Open Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config available at \TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService and modify the values of following connection strings:
     • MainDBConnectionString
     • ArchiveDBConnectionString
     • AuditDBConnectionString
     • ReportingMainDBConnectionString
     • ReportingStagingDBConnectionString

     **Note** The database should point to the machine where the Kofax TotalAgility is installed.

     • Run the Configuration Utility and modify the values of the preceding connection strings available on the Common settings tab.

8. To modify the values of database connections in the Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config, do either of the following:
   • Open Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config available at \TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService and update the following connection strings:
     • MainDBConnectionString
     • ArchiveDBConnectionString
     • AuditDBConnectionString
     • ReportingMainDBConnectionString
     • ReportingStagingDBConnectionString

     **Note** The database should point to the machine where Kofax TotalAgility is installed.

     • Run the Configuration Utility and modify the values of the preceding connection strings available on the Common settings tab.
9. To connect TotalAgility to the desired documents database:
   a. Go to the TotalAgility Main database > SERVER_DATA table > CEBPM_SETTINGS column.
   b. Open the CEBPM_SETTINGS XML file.
   c. In the <Common Settings> section, update the Data Source value to your computer name, Integrated Security to True, and the value of the Initial Catalog to the Data Layer Database name.

   ```xml
   <Common_Settings>
   <ReportingSettings />
   <DataLayerConfiguration RepositoryDBConnectionString="Data
Source=computer name;Initial Catalog=Data Layer
Database;User ID=;Password=;Integrated Security=True;Connect
Timeout=30;Encrypt=False;TrustServerCertificate=False"
RepositoryBlobStorageAccountConnectionString="{DATA_LAYER_BLOB_CONNSTRING}" RepositoryBlobStorageContainerName="{DATA_LAYER_BLOB_CONTAINER}" />
</Common_Settings>
   
   10. Restart the TotalAgilityCoreWorker service for the change to take affect.
   11. Generate the security key. To generate the key, navigate to System > Settings > System > General in the TotalAgility Designer.

Import Artifacts

You must import the standard forms, style sheets and custom assets after installing TotalAgility databases.

**Note** On upgrading TotalAgility, you must manually import the System maps and standard forms.

You can import all the artifact from WorkspacePackage.zip available at the following location:

```plaintext
\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Packages
```

Configure TotalAgility for high availability

You can install a second License Server on a different computer and use it as a backup server for Kofax TotalAgility.

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to \TotalAgility > Licensing > Installs.
2. Click KSALicServerSetup. The License Server Setup window opens.
3. Click Next.
4. In the Destination Folder window, select the default folder (C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax \License Server\) for the License Server or click Change to select a different folder.
5. Click Next and follow the instructions to complete the installation.
Access TotalAgility through iPad or iPhone

To access TotalAgility through iPad or iPhone, update the Web.config file. You can use Windows authentication between the Web and Application servers and still use TotalAgility authentication from the client device to the Web server.

1. Access TotalAgility Web.config file from the following directory on the Web server: C:\Program Files\Kofax\otalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Web.config.
2. Search the .config file for the following: <binding name="BasicHttpBinding_Service".
3. Copy the entire block of code, from <binding> to </binding>.
4. Paste the block under the copied block and rename it to: <binding name="BasicHttpBindingCore_Service".
5. In the copied binding, ensure HTTP with Windows authentication is enabled. This enables the authentication from the Web server to the Application server.
6. Navigate to the start of the core end points, search for: <!--START CORE END POINTS -->.
7. For each core end point replace BasicHttpBinding_Service with BasicHttpBindingCore_Service.
8. To use the authentication from the client device to the web server, update the original BasicHttpBinding_Service binding to use Anonymous authentication and SSL (if required).
10. Log on to TotalAgility ensuring you have been previously added as a TotalAgility user.

Federated Security-Generate a common machine key

When using Federated Security with TotalAgility in a load balance environment, TotalAgility cannot consistently decrypt the encrypted token passed from an Identity Provider using WsFed tokens. This is because, by default, each load balanced server has a unique machine key identifier used for token encryption/decryption.

We recommend that you generate a common machine key and propagate it to all servers in the load balanced environment. For example, if you generate a machine key for the TotalAgility application, the Web.config file gets automatically updated with the machine key element. The configuration of a machine key can be done at Web Server, Site or Application level.

To generate a machine key, perform the following steps:

1. Open Internet Information Services(IIS) manager.
2. Select the TotalAgility application, website or web server from the left panel to generate a machine key.
3. In Features View, right-click Machine Key, and then click Open Feature.
4. On the Machine Key page, select an encryption method from the Encryption method drop-down list.
5. Select a decryption method from the Decryption method drop-down list.
6. Optionally, configure settings for Validation and Decryption keys.
7. In the **Actions** panel, click **Generate Keys**, and then click **Apply**.
When you click apply, the changes are automatically saved in the Web.config file.
To encrypt and decrypt the machine key, see Encrypt and decrypt the TotalAgility configuration files.

### Encrypt and decrypt the TotalAgility configuration files

The TotalAgility configuration files include the DB Connection settings, including sensitive information. Therefore, we recommend that you encrypt the following TotalAgility files.

- Web.config (Use Microsoft ASP.NET IIS Registration Tool)
- Configuration files of executables (Use the Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe utility)

**Note** Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe cannot work with Web.config; it can only work with configurations of executables.

### Encrypt and decrypt Web.config

1. Navigate to **TotalAgility Web.config located at** `<Kofax Install location>\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web`.
2. Use the Microsoft ASP.NET IIS Registration Tool (aspnet_regiis) to encrypt or decrypt any section of the Web.config file. See the Encrypting and Decrypting Configuration sections On the Microsoft website.
   
   At a minimum, encrypt the appSettings section that includes the Database connection information.

### Encrypt and decrypt the configuration files of executables

The configuration files of executables that can be encrypted include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configuration file name</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config</td>
<td><code>&lt;Kofax Install location&gt;\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config</td>
<td>Core Worker Service files:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agility.Server.Core.Executor.exe.config</td>
<td><code>&lt;Kofax Install location&gt;\TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Agility.Server.Core.ExportService.exe.config</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kofax.CEBPM.Reporting.TAService.exe.config</td>
<td>Reporting Server Service file: <code>&lt;Kofax Install location&gt;\TotalAgility\Reporting</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kofax.CEBPM.CPUServer.ServiceHost.exe.config</td>
<td>Transformation Server Service file:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>&lt;Kofax Install location&gt;\TotalAgility\Transformation Server</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KSALicenseService.exe.config</td>
<td>License Server Service file: <code>&lt;Kofax Install location&gt;\TotalAgility\LicenseServer</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add the security provider

Add the following security provider in the configuration file before encrypting them:

```xml
<configProtectedData>
  <providers>
    <add useMachineProtection="true"
      name="DPAPIProtection"
      type="System.Configuration.DpapiProtectedConfigurationProvider,
      System.Configuration, Version=2.0.0.0, Culture=neutral,
      PublicKeyToken=b03f5f7f11d50a3a" />
    <add name="RSAProvider"
      type="System.Configuration.RsaProtectedConfigurationProvider,
      System.Configuration, Version=2.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=b03f5f7f11d50a3a,
      processorArchitecture=MSIL"
      keyContainerName="CPUServerKeys" useMachineContainer="true" />
  </providers>
</configProtectedData>
```

Use the Kofax.CEBPM.Encryption.exe utility

The Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe (located in the TotalAgility installation_folder) utility encrypts (-enc) or decrypts (-dec) any section of the configuration file.

At a minimum, encrypt the appSettings section as it includes the user ID and password as well as other information. Use the optional -h flag to display help for the command.

The TotalAgility Server supports two encryption methods depending on command line parameters using the Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe utility:

- **DPAPI encryption**
- **RSA encryption**

Use the DPAPI encryption method

Use this utility to encrypt one server at a time because you must decrypt the file on the same machine where it was encrypted.

Run the utility on each TotalAgility Server individually.

1. Stop the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service.
2. Navigate to the TotalAgility Core Worker installation directory.
4. Open a Command Prompt window and run the following command:
   ```
   Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe -f Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config -s "appSettings" -p DPAPIProtection -enc
   ```

Use the RSA encryption method

An algorithm for public key encryption and digital signatures that uses two separate keys. Create a key and encrypt the configuration file on one Server, and export the key to all the other Servers. All the
TotalAgility Servers with the exported key installed can access the configuration file. Use this method if you have several Servers with the same configuration.

The following instructions differentiate between the source TotalAgility Server where you create the key and the target TotalAgility Servers onto which you import the key.

**Prepare the key**

Perform these steps on one source TotalAgility Server.

1. Create the custom RSA key container:
   a. Log on to the TotalAgility Server with administrator rights.
   b. Open a command-line window.
   c. Navigate to the .NET Framework version 4.0 directory. For example, enter the following command:
      ```
      cd \WINDOWS\Microsoft.Net\Framework\v4.0.*
      ```
   d. Run the following command:
      ```
      aspnet_regiis -pc "<KeysFile>" -exp
      ```
      where:
      - `<KeysFile>` is the name of the key file.
      - The `-exp` option makes the key exportable.

2. Run the following command to grant the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service user permission to read the `<KeysFile>` RSA container file.
   ```
   aspnet_regiis -pa <KeysFile> <TotalAgililtyserviceuser>
   ```
   where:
   - `<KeysFile>` is the name of the key file you created in Step 1d.
   - `<TAserviceuser>` is the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service user.

3. Encrypt the file:
   a. Log on to the TotalAgility Server as the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service user.
   b. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility Server and open a command-line window.
   c. Run the following command:
      ```
      Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe -f Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config -s "appSettings" -p RSAProvider -enc
      ```
      This command encrypts the appSettings section of the configuration file. The appSettings section includes the user ID, password and other information.

4. Export the key by running the following command:
   ```
   aspnet_regiis -px "<KeysFile>" "<c:\keys.xml>" -pri
   ```
   where:
   - `<KeysFile>` is the default keystore keyContainerName.
   - `<c:\keys.xml>` is the path and file name of the exported key file.
Import the key

Perform these steps on every target TotalAgility Server.

1. Import the key:
   a. Log on to the TotalAgility Server with administrator rights.
   b. Copy the keys.xml file from the source TotalAgility Server to the root C:\ directory of the target TotalAgility Server.
   c. Open a command-line window.
   d. Run the following command:
      ```
      aspnet_regiis -pi "<KeysFile>" "c:\keys.xml"
      ```
      where:
      - `<KeysFile>` is the default name of the key file.
      - `<c:\keys.xml>` is the path and file name to the imported key file.
   e. Delete the keys.xml because it contains the unprotected private key.

2. Run the following command to grant the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service user permissions to use the `<KeysFile>` RSA container file:
   ```
   aspnet_regiis -pa "<KeysFile>" "TotalAgilityserviceuser"
   ```
   where:
   - `<KeysFile>` is the name of the key file you imported in step 1.
   - `<TotalAgilityserviceuser>` is the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service user.

3. Repeat these steps on all remaining TotalAgility Servers.

Decrypt the configuration file

1. Stop the TotalAgility Core Worker Server service.
2. Navigate to the TotalAgility Server installation directory and open a command-line window.
3. Run the following command:
   ```
   Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe -f Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config -s "appSettings" -p DPAPIProtection -dec
   ```
   Important Repeat the encrypt and decrypt procedures for Export configuration file also.

Encrypt the configuration files in a Docker container

To encrypt the Web.config files and all executable configuration files using "DPAPI", you must add the following to your Docker run command.

```
-e KTA_CONFIG_ENCRYPTION_PROVIDER_TYPE="DPAPI"
```

For example, "docker run -d --hostname "opdemo2" --name "opdemo2" --
env-file "C: \Docker\TotalAgility\dockersettings.env" -p 5000:80 -e
KTA_CONFIG_ENCRYPTION_PROVIDER_TYPE="DPAPI" kofaxop"
To encrypt the Web.config files and all executable configuration files using "RSA", you must add the following to your Docker run command.

```
-e KTA_CONFIG_ENCRYPTION_PROVIDER_TYPE="RSA"
```

For example, "docker run -d --hostname "opdemo2" --name "opdemo2" --
env-file "C:\Docker\TotalAgility\dockersettings.env" -p 5000:80 -e
KTA_CONFIG_ENCRYPTION_PROVIDER_TYPE="RSA" kofaxop"

Edit the TotalAgility configuration settings

After installing TotalAgility, to change or update any parameters, edit the following configuration files available in the installation directory.

- Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config
- Web.config
- KSALicenseService.exe.config

You can either edit each of these files separately or run the TotalAgility configuration utility to modify all the settings at one go. The configuration utility is available on the installation media and must be manually copied to your TotalAgility server. See the TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide.

Update the parameter values

When you initially install the TotalAgility Server, the system stores the configuration settings in a .NET file, Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config. To change the value of any parameters, do the following.

1. If you encrypted the configuration file after you installed the TotalAgility server, decrypt the file. See Encrypt and decrypt the TotalAgility configuration files.

   **Note** If you use RSA encryption, decrypt the configuration file only on the source TotalAgility server where you initially encrypted the file.

2. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility server.
4. Locate the following section:

   ```
   <appSettings>
   <add key="KeyNameString" value="which may contain passwords;"/>
   </appSettings>
   ```

5. Edit the parameter values as needed.
6. Save and close the configuration file.
7. To re-encrypt the configuration file, run the encryption utility.

   **Note** If you use RSA encryption, export the key, and install the encryption key file on any target TotalAgility servers imported the original encrypted configuration file.

8. Restart the Kofax TotalAgility Core Worker Server service.
Update the settings for a license server

When installing TotalAgility, by default, the primary license server is used. If the primary license server fails, you can connect to the backup server post installation manually, or run the Configuration utility.

Manually

After installing TotalAgility, you can update the license server parameters in the KSALicenseService.exe available in the installation directory.

1. Stop the Kofax Licenser Server service.
2. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility server.
3. In a text editor, open KSALicenseService.exe.config from the following directory: \\Kofax\TotalAgility\LicenseServer.
4. Locate the following section and update the serverId and connectionStrings parameters. By default, serverId value is "1", which means primary license server is connected.

   a. To connect to the backup license server, modify the serverId value as "2".
   b. Update the LicensingDatabase connection string to point to Main DB for on premise environment.
5. Save and close the configuration file.

Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration utility and select Backup license server setting on the Licensing tab. See the Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide.

Support export vertical scaling

By default, there is no export instance. An export instance is only spawned if there is an export activity that is ready for export. More export instances are spawned if there are more export activities that are ready for export. You can configure TotalAgility to support multiple export instances on an export server.

1. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility Server.
3. Locate the <appSettings> section and change the value of MaxExportProcessesNumber as needed. (Default: 0)

   <appSettings>
   <add key="MaxExportProcessesNumber" value="0"/>
   </appSettings>
Anti-Cross Site Request Forgery (CSRF) measures

Use the following anti-CSRF measures to protect the site against Cross-site Request Forgery attacks.

- **Configure the Anti-CSRF tokens**
- **Specify the SameSite attribute with value as Strict or Lax in the `<hostCookies>` tag of the web.config to prevent CSRF attacks. See the Microsoft website for more information.**
- **Enable Host prefix for cookies**

Anti-Cross Site Request Forgery (CSRF) tokens

A CSRF attack relies on a user being authenticated on a website. The attack usually comes as an email or website hyperlink on which the user clicks while still authenticated. This URL then points back to the user's website and attempts to perform a privileged action (such as add an administrator account) without the user's knowledge. In TotalAgility, the TargetHostName and TargetPortNo settings are added as Anti-CSRF tokens in the Web.config file. The TargetHostName is the fully qualified domain name of the webserver and the TargetPortNo is the website port number. When you provide for these settings, the Anti-CSRF origin and referrer validations are performed on the request URL. If the validation fails, the request will be terminated considering it as a potentially dangerous request.

You can configure the Anti-CSRF tokens in the Web.config manually or using the Configuration Utility.

**Manually**

1. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility server.
2. In a text editor, open Web.config from the following directory: `\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web`.
3. Locate the following section and specify the target host name and target port number.

```xml
<appSettings>
  <add key= "TargetHostName" value="<hostnamegoeshere"/>
  <add key= "TargetPortNo" value="443"
</appSettings>
```

4. Save and close the configuration file.

**Use the Configuration Utility**

Run the Configuration utility and specify the TargetHostName and TargetPortNo settings. See the *Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide*.

**Enable Host prefix for cookies**

Use the "Host Prefix for Cookies", a browser functionality which makes the cookies more secure by prefixing the TotalAgility cookie names with "__HOST-". When a cookie name starts with this flag, it
triggers additional browser policy on the cookie in supporting browsers. A __Host--prefixed cookie is only accessible by the same domain it is set on, which means a subdomain can no longer overwrite the cookie value. It also makes a cookie accessible from HTTPS sites only. This protects the cookie even if an attacker uses a forged insecure site to overwrite a secure cookie.

Edit the setting manually or use the Configuration Utility for enabling or disabling the cookies security.

Perform the following steps on the Web or combined Web/Application server.

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web`.
2. Open web.config in a text editor.
3. Locate the `<appSettings>` section and make sure the value of "UseHostPrefixForCookies" value="true".

```xml
<appSettings>
  <add key="UseHostPrefixForCookies" value="true"/>
</appSettings>
```

Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration Utility and change the Host Prefix for Cookies setting on the Web settings tab as needed.

Configure the wait time for export activities

You can configure the wait time for export activities in seconds so that the Export Service will wait for the configured seconds for new export activities to progress based on the availability of the child export processes.

If all the child export processes are in inactive mode (that is, there are no export activities available), TotalAgility Export Service will wait for the configured seconds for new export activities to process. If any child export process is in an active mode (that is, any child process is executing the Export activity), TotalAgility Export Service will instantaneously take new export activities to export without waiting for the configured seconds.

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService`.
3. Locate the `<appSettings>` section and change the value of "WaitForAvailableExportActivitiesTimeoutInSeconds" as needed. (Default: 30)

```xml
<appSettings>
  <add key="WaitForAvailableExportActivitiesTimeoutInSeconds" value="30"/>
</appSettings>
```

**Note** The minimum value for WaitForAvailableExportActivitiesTimeoutInSeconds is 1 and maximum value is 600.

You must restart the TotalAgility Export Service for the change to take effect.

Update the settings for manual authentication

Perform the following steps on the Web or combined Web/Application server and Application Server.
Edit the setting manually or use the Configuration Utility for manual authentication.

Web server or combined Web/Application server

Perform the following steps on the Web or combined Web/Application server and Application Server.

Manually

1. Open the TotalAgility Web.config file from the following directory: C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web.
2. Locate the following bindings: "CustomBinding_CoreService", "BasicHttpBinding_Service" and "WebHttpBinding_Service" and comment out all the three security mode configurations for manual logon over http.

   <!-- The following are the different options for securing the services -->
   <!-- Only one option should be uncommented at a time -->
   <!-- Azure should use HTTPS SSL with application logon-->
   <!-- On premise default: HTTP with Windows authentication-->
   <!-- HTTPS SSL with application logon-->
   <security mode="Transport">  
     <transport clientCredentialType="None"/>  
   </security>  
   <security>  
     <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />  
   </security>  
   <security>  
     <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />  
   </security>

   Note In the TotalAgility Web.config file, under the section, TransformationServerExternalService_Binding, the security mode and transport clientCredentialType should be same as specified in the Transformation Server Web.config file.

Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration Utility and change the mode of authentication on the Web settings tab as needed.

Application server

Manually

1. Open the TotalAgility Web.config file from the following directory: C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web.
2. Locate the following bindings, "CustomBinding_CoreService", "BasicHttpBinding_Service" and "WebHttpBinding_Service" and comment out all the three security mode configurations for manual logon over http.

   <!-- The following are the different options for securing the services -->
   <!-- All commented out is application manual logon over HTTP -->
   <!-- Only one option should be uncommented at a time -->
   <!-- Azure should use HTTPS SSL with application logon-->
   <!-- On premise default: HTTP with Windows authentication-->
   <!-- HTTPS SSL with application logon-->
   <security mode="Transport">  
     <transport clientCredentialType="None"/>  
   </security>  
   <security>  
     <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />  
   </security>  
   <security>  
     <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />  
   </security>
Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration Utility and change the mode of authentication on the Web settings tab as needed.

Update the settings for manual and Windows authentication

When you install TotalAgility, you can choose the logon mode as manual or Windows authentication. However, post installation, you can switch the logon mode to use both Windows and manual (mixed) authentication by running the Configuration Utility. If the Windows authentication fails, you will be redirected to the manual logon page.

Use mixed authentication on the Web server or combined Web/Application server

Perform the following steps on the Web server or combined Web/Application server to set up mixed authentication (Windows and manual).

1. Open the TotalAgility `Web.config` file from the following directory: \Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web.
2. Locate the following Bindings: `BasicHttpBinding_Service` and `WebHttpBinding_Service` and comment out the security mode configurations for manual logon over http.
3. Locate the following ClientWindowsService Bindings: `BasicHttpWindowsUserBinding_Service` and `WebHttpWindowsUserBinding_Service` and comment out the security mode configurations for Windows Authentication logon over http.

```xml
<transport clientCredentialType="None"/>
</security>-->  
<!-- All commented out is application manual logon over HTTP -->  
<!-- Only one option should be uncommented at a time -->  
<!-- Azure should use HTTPS SSL with application logon-->  
<!-- On premise default: HTTP with Windows authentication-->  
<!--=security mode="Transport">  
<transport clientCredentialType="None"/>
</security>-->  
<!-- HTTP with Windows authentication-->  
<security mode="TransportCredentialOnly">  
<transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />  
</security>-->  
<!-- HTTPS SSL with Windows authentication-->  
<!--security mode="Transport">  
<transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />  
</security>-->  
```
Use the Configuration Utility

After installing TotalAgility, to use the mixed authentication, run the Configuration Utility and switch the mode of authentication (HTTP with manual and Windows authentication or HTTPS with manual and Windows authentication) on the Web settings tab, as needed.

**Note** To use mixed authentication, you must enable both the Anonymous and Windows Authentication options in the IIS.

Update settings for the TotalAgility linked servers

Edit the setting manually or use the Configuration Utility for manual authentication.

Manually

On installing TotalAgility, the Web.config is updated automatically with machine name / TotalAgility for linked servers. If you want to connect from a public IP Address, you must update the Web.config file.

1. Open the TotalAgility Web.config file from the following directory: `\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web`
2. Locate the following section and replace the IP Address with your machine name.

```
<add key="TotalAgilityHostNameLive" value = "<ip_address>/TotalAgility" />
<add key="TotalAgilityHostNameDev" value = "<ip_address>/TotalAgility"/>
```

See the Kofax TotalAgility help for more information.

Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration Utility and update the TotalAgilityHostNameLive key.

Alter the virtual root for the Kofax TotalAgility website

1. Open the TotalAgility Web.config file from the following directory: `\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web`
2. Modify the following configuration keys to alter the virtual root for the Kofax TotalAgility website:

```
<add key="WebsiteBaseName" value="TotalAgility"/>
<add key="ProcessDocumentsRootFolder" value="/TotalAgility/documents/process"/>
```

**Note** The value for the "WebsiteBaseName" should be the name of the virtual directory used within the IIS.

Add custom job thread pools

A job thread performs multiple operations at a time, such as job evaluation, raising an exception job or ingestion through Kofax Import Connector. Multiple operations can lead to bottlenecks in the production systems. For example, when there are thousands of jobs to be archived, ingestion and job evaluation take longer time because the job threads are busy archiving jobs. Adding custom job thread pools, helps in achieving better throughput and prioritizing the background tasks.
You can add custom job thread pools, specify the number of threads in the thread pool and assign the worker task to a thread pool manually or use the Configuration Utility.

**Manually**

1. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility server.
2. In a text editor, open `Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config` from the following directory: `\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web`
3. Locate the following section:

```
<configSections>
</configSections>
```

4. Add one or more job thread pools within the `CoreWorker` section and add worker tasks, as required. The following is a sample from the configuration file.

**Example**

```
<CoreWorker>
  <JobThreadPools>
    <add Id ="1" Size ="16" WorkerTasks ="ArchiveJobTask, DeleteItemTask, CreateExceptionTask, CreateJobTask, EvaluateJobTask, ProcessStateActionTask, IngestSystemTask, CaptureBatchTask "/>
  </JobThreadPools>
</CoreWorker>
```

**Note** You must assign the following worker tasks to some thread pool, otherwise, an error message is displayed and the Core Worker Service stops working. You cannot assign the same worker task to more than one thread pool.

- ArchiveJobTask
- EvaluateJob Task
- CreateException Task
- CreateJob Task
- IngestSystem Task
- CaptureBatch Task
- DeleteItem Task
- ProcessStateAction Task

5. Save and close the configuration file.
6. Restart the TotalAgility Core Worker service.

**Use the Configuration Utility**

Run the Configuration utility and add or update the custom job thread pools, specify the number of threads in the thread pool and assign the worker task to a thread pool.
Add a thread pool monitoring interval

When long running automatic activities are processed by the Core Worker, the threads in the automatic activity thread pool are not freed up when the taken activity is reset due to timeout. Configure a thread pool monitoring interval to free up the threads for these long running taken activities to allow other activities to progress once they timeout.

You can configure the thread pool monitoring interval manually or use the Configuration Utility.

Manually

1. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility server.
2. In a text editor, open Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config from the following directory: \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web
3. Locate the following section and add a thread pool monitoring interval (default:60).

   <appSettings>
   <add key="CoreWorkerThreadPoolMonitoringIntervalInSeconds" value="60"/>
   </appSettings>

   The default value is 60.
4. Save and close the configuration file.
5. Restart the TotalAgility Core Worker service.

Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration utility and add the thread pool monitoring interval. See the TotalAgility Configuration utility Guide.

Add performance monitoring counters

Use the performance counters to record application states and activities.

The following categories for TotalAgility performance monitoring counters are automatically installed on the target machine when the Core Worker Service and the Export Service are installed:

- TotalAgility Core Worker: Locked Activities
- TotalAgility Core Worker: System Tasks
- TotalAgility Core Worker: Threads
- TotalAgility Core Worker: Worker Tasks
- TotalAgility Export Service
- TotalAgility Child Export Processes

Each category is associated with the performance counters. When the performance monitor is launched, you can select the installed counters and add to the current monitoring session. Each instance is recorded for a performance counter. For example, the Active Threads Per Thread pool performance counter records an instance per thread pool as shown in the image below.
You can log each performance counter to the TotalAgility log file by enabling the logging function. For more information on performance monitoring counters, see the *Kofax TotalAgility Administrator's Guide*.

**Install the language pack**

The languages files are available at the following location in the installation directory:

```
\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\LocalizationFiles
```
After installing TotalAgility, import <Language>.zip using the "Import Languages" feature of the TotalAgility menu.

When you change your browser to one of the supported languages, the corresponding translation is displayed.

**Note** Only the Workspace is localized according to the browser display language after installing the language pack.

### Install the .NET Framework language packs

To localize the system error messages from .NET, you must install the .NET Framework language packs on both the Web and Application servers.

You can download the .NET Framework language pack from the Microsoft website.

### Access TotalAgility documentation

You can access help online as well as in offline mode.

#### Online documentation

The product documentation for Kofax TotalAgility 7.8.0 is now available at the following location:

https://docshield.kofax.com/Portal/Products/KTA/7.8.0-dpm5ap0j8k/KTA.htm

To launch the online help for the installed version of the product, click the Help icon on the application.

**Note**

- On upgrading to TotalAgility 7.8.0 from an earlier version, to view the TotalAgility Workspace help, you must import the WorkspaceHeader form from the TotalAgility Workspace package.
- When upgrading to TotalAgility 7.8.0 from an earlier version, ensure that the check box for "Import system Workspace package" is selected to view the Workspace help online; otherwise, you must import the WorkspaceHeader form from the TotalAgility Workspace package.

#### Offline documentation

To access the documentation offline, you can download it from the Kofax Fulfillment Site. For each language, a separate documentation package is available to download as a compressed file, such as Kofax TotalAgilityDocumentation7.8.0_EN.zip for English or Kofax TotalAgilityDocumentation7.8.0_FR.zip for French.

The English .zip file includes both help and print folders. The print folder contains all guides, such as installation guide and administrator's guide. The .zip files for other languages contain only the localized files as applicable.

The following procedure describes accessing TotalAgility documentation offline for English.

1. From the Kofax Fulfillment Site, download the documentation.zip file for the applicable language.
2. Extract the contents of the compressed documentation file and do the following:

**Note** In a distributed environment, perform copying files on the Web server, and the Web.config changes on the Application and Web servers.

- Copy the contents from TotalAgility_help\EN folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help\TotalAgility_designer
- Copy the contents from KTAW\EN folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help
- Copy the contents from KTAWCC\EN folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help
- Copy the contents from ProjectBuilder\EN (Transformation Designer) folder to:
  <\%ProgramFiles\%>\Kofax\Transformation\Help\en_US
- Copy the contents from TotalAgility_opmt_help\EN folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web.TenantManagement\TenantManagement\Help
- Copy the contents from TotalAgility_quickcapture\EN folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help\QuickCapture

**Note** Quick Capture folder is not available by default. Create "QuickCapture" folder within the Help folder and copy the contents into the folder.

- Copy the contents from TotalAgility_KEC_help\EN folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help\ExportConnector_help
- Copy the contents from the activity (such as CEBPM_scanclient_help\EN) folder within ThinClientServer folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Forms\Controls\Capture\Help
- Copy the contents from KFS_adminconsoleTA\EN (Devices help) to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\bin\Administrative\Help
- Copy the contents from TotalAgility_repositorybrowser help\EN to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help\TotalAgility_repositorybrowser
- Copy the contents from the SDK_Documentation folder to:
  \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Help\API
- Copy the contents from TotalAgility_documentconverterhelp\EN folder to:
  \Kofax\Document Converter\web\en\WebHelp
- Copy the contents from KIC_mchelp\EN folder to:
  \Kofax\KIC-ED\MC\web\en\WebHelp
3. Navigate to the installation folder and do the following:
   • For TotalAgility help and Devices help:
     a. Open TotalAgility Web.config in a text editor from the following location:
        ```\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web```
     b. Locate the `<appSettings>` section and remove `http://docshield.kofax.com/KTA` from the key value:
        ```<add key="OnlineHelpURL" value="http://docshield.kofax.com/KTA"/>```  
        Alternatively, run the Configuration Utility (available from the Installation media at ```\TotalAgility\Utilities\ConfigurationUtility``` and remove the URL for online help from the OnlinehelpURL setting.
   • For Kofax Export Connector help:
     a. Open Agility.Server.ExportConnector.exe.config in a text editor from the following location:
        ```\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\bin```  
     b. Locate the `<appSettings>` section and remove `http://docshield.kofax.com/KTA` from the key value:
        ```<add key="OnlineHelpURL" value="http://docshield.kofax.com/KTA"/>```  
   • For Message Connector help:
     a. Open configuration.xml in a text editor from the following location:
        ```\Kofax\KIC-ED\MC\web```  
     b. Locate the `<OnlineHelp>1</OnlineHelp>` section and replace 1 with 0.
   • For Document Converter help:
     a. Open configuration.xml in a text editor from the following location:
        ```\Kofax\Document Converter\web```  
     b. Locate the `<OnlineHelp>1</OnlineHelp>` section and replace 1 with 0.

4. Save and close the configuration file.
   Clicking the Help icon will launch the help for the installed product.

Run EVRSCheck utility

The EvrsCheck utility helps in testing how an image will look once the eVRS setting is applied to it. The left half of the application window displays the original image and the right half displays the processed image once the setting is applied to it.

1. Run the `EvrsCheck.exe` available at the following location in the Installation folder:
   ```\TotalAgility\Utilities\EvrsCheck```  
   The Before and After window opens.
2. Click Choose and select an image.
   The selected image with its metadata appears in the left half of the window. If the selected image is a multi-page image, you can use the "<" and ">" buttons to navigate between pages.
3. Copy the desired eVRS setting and paste it into the **EVRS Settings** box. The image is processed based on the eVRS settings. The output along with its metadata is displayed in the right half of the window.

**Note** You can edit the eVRS setting; the image starts reprocessing as you type.
Chapter 3

Transformation Server Bundle installation

The Transformation Server Bundle includes:

- Transformation Server
- Transformation Core modules

To install any component, you must install the entire Transformation Server Bundle.

You can install the Transformation Server Bundle when you install TotalAgility, or install the Transformation Server Bundle separately.

**Note**

- Before installing the Transformation Server Bundle, it may be necessary to install the USERTrust Certificate and the DigiCert Assured ID Root CA Certificate in your environment. The installation may fail if these certificates are missing.
- For development environments, install the Transformation Server Bundle where you installed TotalAgility. For production environments, install the Transformation Server Bundle on a separate computer.
- If you install the Transformation Server or Transformation Designer independent of TotalAgility, make sure the supported version of .NET Framework is already installed on that machine.
- The user who will run the Transformation Server must have "Log on as Service" rights. Also, the user who is running Transformation Server will be used for all communication channels where Windows authentication is used. For example, if Windows authentication is being used for SQL Server, this user must have rights on this server, otherwise Transformation Server does not work.
- After installing the Transformation Server, you can modify the configuration settings by editing the Transformation Server configuration file or by running the configuration utility. See the [Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide](#).

Perform a silent installation

This section describes installing the Transformation Server Bundle silently, independent of TotalAgility.

1. On the installation media, navigate to `\TotalAgility\Transformation Server`.
2. On the Command prompt window, run the following command:

   ```
   TransformationServerSetup.exe /quiet /log %LogFile% TS_INSTALLLOCATION=%InstallLocation% TS_SERVICE_ACCOUNT=%WindowsServiceAccount% TS_SERVICE_PASSWORD=%WindowsServicePassword% TS_USE_SPECIFIC_POOL=%UseSpecificPool% TS_POOL_NAME=%PoolName% TS_OLENDED=%OLEnabled % TS_WCF_PORT=%WcfPort% TS_RESERVED_SLOTS=%ReservedSlots%
   ```
Tip Optionally, call TS_SETUP_CONFIG_FILE int eh installation command. This property requires an absolute path to a configuration file for the installer. The configuration file can have one parameter per line only. Using such a configuration file will prevent the setup.exe from logging sensitive data.

**TS_SETUP_CONFIG_FILE example:**

```
TS_INSTALLLOCATION= "<Installation path>\Kofax\TotalAgility\Transformation Server\"
TS_SERVICE_ACCOUNT=**account name**
TS_SERVICE_PASSWORD=**Password**
TS_SERVER_SERVICE_URL= https://**Name/IP/**/TotalAgility/Services/Core/ServerService.svc
TS_USE_SPECIFIC_POOL=FALSE
TS_POOL_NAME=
TS_OLENABLED=TRUE
TS_WCF_PORT=9001
TS_RESERVED_SLOTS=0
TS_OVERRIDE_DEF_SLOTS=
TS_MAX_SLOTS=0
TS_ENABLE_SYNC_CALLS=TRUE
TS_MAIN_DB_CONNECTION_STRING=Server=**Name/IP**;Trusted_Connection=Yes;Database=**DB Name**;
TS_AUDIT_DB_CONNECTION_STRING=Server=localhost;Trusted_Connection=Yes;Database=TotalAgility;
TS_ARCHIVE_DB_CONNECTION_STRING=Server=localhost;Trusted_Connection=Yes;Database=TotalAgility;
TS_REPORTING_STAGING_DB_CONNECTION_STRING=Server=localhost;Trusted_Connection=Yes;Database=TotalAgility_Reporting_Staging;
TS_STARTSERVICE=TRUE
TS_SYNCHRONOUS_ONLY=false
```

See the Transformation Server Info section in Silent installation of Web and Application on the same server for more information on the Transformation Server parameters.

The parameter names are case-sensitive. If the value of a parameter has spaces, enclose the value in quotation marks.

3. To ensure that the installation works as expected, perform the following steps:
   b. Locate the TransformationServerExternalService_Binding binding parameter and ensure that the `<transport ClientCredentialType>` value is set to Windows.
   c. Save and close the web configuration file.
Perform a standard installation

1. Ensure that the user who will run the Transformation Server has Log on as Service rights.
2. Access the Transformation Server Bundle installer from one of the following methods:
   - **Production systems**: Install the Transformation Server Bundle separately from TotalAgility. Navigate to \Transformation Server\Transformation Server on the installation media and run one of the following commands:
     - To install without creating a log file, run TransformationServerSetup.exe.
     - To install and create a log file, run setup.exe/log <path\install_log.txt> where <path\install_log.txt> is the path and name of the log file.
   - **Development systems**: If you are installing the Transformation Server Bundle as part of the TotalAgility installation, the Transformation Server Bundle installer opens automatically.
3. Click **Install**.
   The system installs any necessary prerequisites.
4. Click **Next**.
   The Kofax Transformation Server Setup window opens.
5. Click **Next**.
6. In the license agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement.
   This window is not displayed if the Transformation Server is installed automatically as part of TotalAgility installation.
7. Click **Next**.
   The system prompts you for a destination folder for the Transformation Server.
8. Enter the destination and click **Next**.
9. In the Service Account Setup window, enter the credentials for the user who will run the Transformation Server. These credentials are also used to encrypt sensitive data.
   a. In the Username field, enter the user name. To specify a domain user, enter the user name in the format Domain\User.
   b. Enter and confirm the Password.
   c. Click **Next**.
   The Setting up connection data window opens.
10. Enter the connection string for the Main, Archive, Audit and Reporting_Staging databases to connect to and authenticate with the databases.
   Use the following syntax:
   
   ```
   Server=<server address>;Database=TotalAgility;User ID=<user_name>;Password=<password>;
   ```
   If installing on split web/app, use the following syntax:

   ```
   Server=<server name>; Trusted_Connection=yes; Database=<database name>;
   ```
   Specify the address of the database server and the user name and password to authenticate with database where indicated. Example:

   ```
   Server=dbserver\dbinstance;Database=TotalAgility;User ID=dbo_id;Password=dbopassword;
   ```
11. Click Next.
12. Specify the connection options to TotalAgility server:
   a. To enable the Transformation Server to process online learning tasks, select **Enable Online Learning processing by this Transformation Server instance**.
   b. Optionally, select **Process activities from specific Transformation Server pool** and enter a Pool name.
      
      **Note** To select the default pool, select **Default Transformation Server Thread Pool**.
13. Click Next.
   
   The **Advanced execution options** window opens. These options control the slots reserved for incoming high-priority activities.
14. Select the advanced execution options:
   - **Enable support for Quick Capture**: Select this option to provide the back end service necessary to support the Quick Capture Solution service.
   - **Enable synchronous calls processing**: Select this option to configure the TCP/IP port and the number of reserved processing slots. The default TCP/IP port is 9001, and the number of reserved processing slots is 0.
      
      **Note** If you are upgrading from version 7.0.0, "Enable synchronous calls processing" is not enabled if the number of reserved processing slots is zero and it is enabled if there are one or more reserved processing slots.
   - **Override default* number of processing slots**: Select this option to specify number of slots other than the default.
15. Click Next.
   
   The Kofax Transformation Server is now ready to install.
16. Click **Install** to install the Transformation Server.
   
   The system displays the installation status and a message when Transformation Server setup is complete.
17. Click **Finish** to continue.
   
   The system displays the Transformation Server Bundle setup status and a message when the Transformation Server Bundle setup is successful.
18. Click **Close** to close the success message window.
19. To ensure that the installation works as expected, perform the following steps:
   b. Locate the `TransformationServerExternalService_Binding` binding parameter and ensure that the `<transport ClientCredentialType>` value is set to Windows.
   
   c. Save and close the web configuration file.
20. From the Service console, start the Kofax Transformation Server service.
21. If applicable, restart the anti-virus or firewall applications.
Encrypt and decrypt the configuration file

The configuration file includes the Transformation Server settings, including sensitive information. Therefore, we recommend that you encrypt this file. The Transformation Server supports two encryption methods depending on command line parameters:

- **DPAPI encryption**: Because you must decrypt the file on the same machine where it was encrypted, use this utility to encrypt one server at a time. See Use Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe.

- **RSA encryption**: An algorithm for public key encryption and digital signatures that uses two separate keys. Create a key and encrypt the configuration file on one Transformation Server, and export the key to all the other Transformation Servers. All the Transformation Servers with the exported key installed can access the configuration file. Use this method if you have several Transformation Servers with the same configuration (TAService ID, pool name, and so on). See Use RSA Encryption.

To decrypt the configuration file, see Decrypt the configuration file.

Use Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe

The Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe utility encrypts (-enc) or decrypts (-dec) the CPUServer and appSettings sections of the configuration file. The CPUServer section includes the TotalAgility Session ID. The AppSettings section includes the user ID and password as well as other information. Use the optional -h flag to display help for the command.

Encrypt a File with Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe

Run the utility on each Transformation Server individually.

1. Stop the Transformation Server service.
2. Navigate to the Transformation Server installation directory and open a command Prompt window.
3. Run the following command:

```
Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe -f Kofax.CEBPM.CPUServer.ServiceHost.exe.config -s "appSettings" -p DPAPIProtection -enc
```

Use RSA encryption

Use RSA encryption to encrypt the configuration file, export the encryption key, and install the encryption key file on multiple Transformation Servers. Use this method if you have several Transformation Servers with the same configuration (TAService ID, pool name, and so on).

The following instructions differentiate between the source Transformation Server where you create the key and the target Transformation Servers onto which you import the key.
Prepare the key

Perform these steps on one source Transformation Server.

1. Create the custom RSA key container:
   a. Log on to the Transformation Server with administrator rights.
   b. Open a Command Prompt window.
   c. Navigate to the .NET Framework version 4.5 directory. For example, enter the following command:
      \cd \WINDOWS\Microsoft.Net\Framework\v4.5.*
   d. Run the following command:
      \aspnet_regiis -pc "<KeysFile>" -exp
      where:
      • <KeysFile> is the name of the key file.
      • The -exp option makes the key exportable.

2. Run the following command to grant the Transformation Server service user permission to read the <KeysFile> RSA container file.
   \aspnet_regiis -pa "<KeysFile>" "<TSserviceuser>"
   where:
   • <KeysFile> is the name of the key file you created in Step 1d.
   • <TSserviceuser> is the Transformation Server service user.

3. Encrypt the file:
   a. Log on to the Transformation Server as the Transformation Server service user.
   b. Navigate to the installation directory for the Transformation Server and open a Command Prompt window.
   c. Run the following command:
      \Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe -f
      Kofax.CEBPM.CPUServer.ServiceHost.exe.config -s "appSettings" -p RSAProvider -enc
      This command encrypts the CPUServer and AppSettings sections of the configuration file. The CPUServer section includes the TotalAgility Session ID. The AppSettings section includes the user ID, password and other information.

4. Export the key by running the following command:
   \aspnet_regiis -px "<KeysFile>" "<c:\keys.xml>" -pri
   where:
   • <KeysFile> is the default keystore keyContainerName.
   • <c:\keys.xml> is the path and file name of the exported key file.
Import the key

Perform these steps on every target Transformation Server.

1. Import the key:
   a. Log on to the Transformation Server with administrator rights.
   b. Copy the keys.xml file from the source Transformation Server to the root directory of the target Transformation Server.
   c. Open a Command Prompt window.
   d. Run the following command:
      ```
      aspnet_regiis -pi "<KeysFile>" "c:\keys.xml"
      ```
      where:
      - `<KeysFile>` is the default name of the key file.
      - `<c:\keys.xml>` is the path and file name to the imported key file.
   e. Delete the keys.xml because it contains the unprotected private key.

2. Run the following command to grant the Transformation Server service user permissions to use the `<KeysFile>` RSA container file:
   ```
   aspnet_regiis -pa "<KeysFile>" "TSserviceuser"
   ```
   where:
   - `<KeysFile>` is the name of the key file you imported in step 1.
   - `<TSserviceuser>` is the Transformation Server service user.

3. Repeat these steps on all remaining Transformation Servers.

Decrypt the configuration file

1. Stop the Transformation Server service.
2. Navigate to the Transformation Server installation directory and open a command-line window.
3. Run the following command:
   ```
   Kofax.CEBPM.EncryptConfig.exe -f
   Kofax.CEBPM.CPUServer.ServiceHost.exe.config -s "appSettings" -p DPAPIProtection -deC
   ```

Edit the configuration file

Modify the Transformation Server configuration file, `Kofax.CEBPM.CPUServer.ServiceHost.exe.config` if the system configuration has changed, or when you need to resolve a technical or performance issue.

1. If you encrypted the configuration file after you installed the Transformation Server, decrypt the file. See Decrypt the configuration file.

   **Note** If RSA encryption is used, decrypt the configuration file only on the source Transformation Server where you initially encrypted the file.

3. Back up the file and save it in a secure location.

4. Open the configuration file in a text editor.

5. To change the system configuration options, modify the keys in the `<appSettings>` section.
   - The section contains a list of keys for setting configuration options. The ones that can be modified have comments that describe the setting and supported values, as in this example.
   ```xml
   <!-- Maximum number of instances allowed for Executor Process -->
   <add key="MaxNumberOfTenantProcesses" value="1"/>
   ```

6. Change the value within the quotation marks to a supported value, as indicated in the comments.

7. To change how errors are reported in the application event log, which can be viewed in the Event Viewer, modify the `<system.diagnostics>` section as follows:
   
   a. Under `<switches>`, locate the following element:
      ```xml
      <add name="TraceLevelSwitch" value="Warning"/>
      ```
      - By default, the value is set to Warning, which reports error and warning messages. Change the value to any of the options listed in the comment to change the type of messages reported.
   
   b. Under `<sharedListeners>`, locate the following line:
      ```xml
      ```
      - To specify a different log file or change the format for timestamps, change the value of `initializeData` as shown in the comments in the file.

8. Save and close the configuration file.

9. To re-encrypt the configuration file, run the encryption utility. See Encrypt and Decrypt the configuration file.

10. Restart the Kofax Transformation Server service.

### Install the NLP language packs manually

If the Transformation Designer is installed on a separate server than the Transformation Server Bundle in your solution, then you need to install the Kofax NLP engine language packs on the machine where Transformation Designer is installed. This is because the Kofax NLP engine language packs are installed by the Transformation Server Bundle only, and these languages are required to use the Kofax NLP functionality in Transformation Designer and in production.

To install the Kofax NLP engine language packs, you need access to the original Kofax TotalAgility installation zip file.
You can install the Kofax NLP engine language packs by following these steps.

1. Navigate to the `TotalAgility\TransformationServer\KofaxTransformation_Salience6.4` path inside the extracted Kofax TotalAgility installation zip file.

2. Double-click on one of the following .MSP files depending on what languages you are supporting.
   - `KofaxTransformation_SalienceV6.4.0_LanguageBundle_western-default`
     Run to install English, Spanish, Portuguese, French, and German support.
   - `KofaxTransformation_SalienceV6.4.0_LanguageBundle_western-extended`
     Run to install Italian, Romanian, and Dutch support.
   - `KofaxTransformation_SalienceV6.4.0_LanguageBundle_extended`
     Run this to install Japanese, Chinese, and Korean support.

A Windows Installer window appears and then installs the selected Kofax NLP languages automatically.

The installer window closes when the installation is complete.

3. Optionally, double-click on another language installer if you want to support additional languages.

### Upgrade Transformation Server using silent installation

To upgrade the Transformation Server in silent mode, use the following command, replacing the example content with your own environment.

```cmd
setup.exe /quiet /Upgrade /log installation.log TS_SERVER_SERVICE_URL=http://<Server>/TotalAgility/Services/Core/ServerService.svc TS_INSTALLLOCATION="<Program Files>\Kofax\TotalAgility\Transformation Server" TS_MAIN_DB_CONNECTION_STRING="Server=servername;Database=databasename;User Id=sa;Password=password" TS_SERVICE_ACCOUNT=serviceAccountName TS_SERVICE_PASSWORD=password TS_STARTSERVICE=TRUE
```

### Uninstall the Transformation Server

Uninstall Transformation Server depending on how you have installed it.

- When you install Transformation Server as part of Kofax TotalAgility standard installation, uninstalling TotalAgility will automatically uninstall Transformation Server.
- When you install Transformation Server on a separate system, uninstall the Transformation Server Bundle from the Control Panel.
- To uninstall in a silent mode, do the following:
  - Navigate to the root directory of TransformationServerSetup.exe.
  - Run `TransformationServerSetup.exe / uninstall / quiet`.

The system uninstalls the Transformation Server and automatically creates a log file in the temporary files folder. This log file contains information on errors, if any.
Chapter 4

Reporting Server installation

This chapter describes two methods for installing the Kofax Reporting Server:
• Silent installation of Reporting Server independent of TotalAgility
• Standard installation using the installation wizard.

For development environments, install the Reporting Server where you installed TotalAgility. Otherwise, install the Reporting Server on a separate system in the same domain where you installed TotalAgility.

Note If you choose to install the Reporting Server on a separate system in the same domain where you installed TotalAgility, then you must assign the following roles to service account:
• For the Staging database: kfx_staging
• For the data warehouse: kfx_etl, kfx_reader, kfx_advanced_reader

Perform a silent installation

The section describes the silent installation of the Reporting Server, independent of TotalAgility.

See the following table for the silent installation parameters required to install the Reporting Server.

Note Parameter names are case-sensitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INSTALLLOCATION</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Reporting Server\</td>
<td>Specify the Reporting Server destination directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINSERV_ACCOUNT</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the name of the user who will run the Reporting Server. To specify a domain user, enter the user name in the format Domain\User. Ensure that the account details are correct, as under this account Reporting Server authenticates in all places where Windows authentication is used. Example, TotalAgility database. All communication and resource access is run under this account. Therefore, the account under which Reporting Server is running must not be a dummy account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINSERV_PASSWORD</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the Password for the user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Kofax TotalAgility Installation Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAIN_DB_CONNECTION_STRING</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the connection string for the Main database. Example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Server=&lt;hostname&gt;;Trusted_Connection=Yes;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Database=TotalAgility;&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIT_DB_CONNECTION_STRING</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the connection string for the Audit database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPORTING_STAGING_DB_CONNECTION_STRING</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the connection string for the Reporting Staging database.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REPORTING_WORKHOUSE_DB_CONNECTION_STRING</td>
<td>no default</td>
<td>Enter the connection string for the Reporting Workhouse database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. On the TotalAgility installation media, navigate to \TotalAgility\Reporting\TAReportingService.
2. Run the following command:
   
   ```
   msiexec.exe /i Kofax.Reporting.TAService.msi /q WINSERVER_ACCOUNT=%WindowsServiceAccount% WINSERVER_PASSWORD=%WindowsServicePassword% MAIN_DB_CONNECTION_STRING="%MainDBConnectionString%" INSTALLLOCATION="%InstallLocation%" AUDIT_DB_CONNECTION_STRING="%AuditDBConnectionString%" REPORTING_STAGING_DB_CONNECTION_STRING="%ReportingStagingDBConnectionString%" REPORTING_WAREHOUSE_DB_CONNECTION_STRING="%ReportingConnectionString%"
   ```

### Perform a standard installation

2. Click Next.
3. In the End-User License Agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click Next.
4. In the Destination Folder window, select the default folder (C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax\TotalAgility\Reporting Server) for the Reporting server or click Change to choose another folder.
5. Click Next.
6. In the Service Account Setup window, enter the credentials for the user who will run the Kofax TotalAgility Reporting Server service:
   a. In the Username field, enter the username.
   
   **Note** To specify a domain user, enter the username in the format Domain\User.
   b. Enter and confirm the Password.
   c. Click Next.
7. In the Obtaining TotalAgility Configuration window:
   a. Specify TotalAgility Server service URL in the following format: http://<server_name>/
      TotalAgility/Services/Core/ServerService.svc
      Here <server_name> is the TotalAgility server name.
      Note To install Web Service over SSL, use ‘https://’ instead of ‘http://’ in the URL.
   b. In the Main DB connection string box, enter the connection string for the TotalAgility database.
   c. Click Next. The system downloads the configuration settings.
8. Click Install to begin the installation.
9. Click Finish.

Uninstall the Reporting Server

Uninstall the Reporting Server depending on how you have installed it.
   • When you install the Reporting Server as part of Kofax TotalAgility standard installation, uninstalling
     TotalAgility will automatically uninstall the Reporting Server.
   • When you install the Reporting Server on a separate system using the Wizard, uninstall the Reporting
     Server from the Control Panel.
   • If you install the Reporting Server in a silent mode, you must do the following to uninstall the Reporting
     Server in a silent mode:
       1. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the
       2. Run msiexec.exe/quiet/x Kofax.Reporting.TAService.msi/L*V"%LogFileName%". The system
          uninstalls the Reporting Server and automatically creates a log file in the temporary
          files folder. This log file contains information on errors, if any. You can use "msiexec/help"
          (Windows installer help) to check options for the installation and logging.
Chapter 5

Integrate Microsoft SharePoint with TotalAgility

Set up the SharePoint server and the TotalAgility server for using SharePoint in TotalAgility.

Note The SharePoint integration components should not be installed on the same machine where TotalAgility is installed.

1. Navigate to \SharePointInstallation on the installation media, and double click Setup.exe. The system opens the TotalAgility for SharePoint Setup wizard.

2. Click Next. The system displays the TotalAgility SharePoint Components window.

3. Select the TotalAgility SharePoint components to install.
   a. To install the SharePoint web parts, select the TotalAgility SharePoint WebParts check box.
   b. To install the SharePoint web service and event-handler dlls, select the TotalAgility SharePoint Event-Handling Components check box.
   c. To install the TotalAgility SharePoint custom pages, select the TotalAgility SharePoint Custom Pages check box.
      • By default, the Add Assembly To GAC check box is selected. The files are automatically added to Global Assembly Cache.
      • If you do not have access to GAC, clear the Add Assembly To GAC check box and enter the SharePoint Site Port Number. The files are automatically added to the bin folder (default location is C:\inetpub\wwwroot\wss\VirtualDirectories\[PortNumber]\bin) within the site.

   Note You can rerun the setup at a later date to install the custom pages if you did not do it initially.

   d. On the list of Website to host TotalAgility SharePoint components, select a website.

   Note You must not select the SharePoint related websites.

4. Click Install.

5. Update Web.config to get custom pages, support event handlers and configure SharePoint site. See Update the Web configuration file.

Further configure:
   • TotalAgility custom web pages in SharePoint
   • TotalAgility Web parts in the SharePoint server
   • Microsoft SharePoint Server and TotalAgility to provide fault tolerance
Configure the Application Pool for the SharePoint communicator site

1. Ensure that SharepointAppPool user should be either Primary or Secondary site collection administrator.
2. Ensure that this user also resides in TotalAgility.

   **Note** You can get this information from the appropriate SharePoint site.

3. Configure the same application pool in the SharePoint communicator site.

Update the Web configuration file

Update Web.config for the TotalAgility components.

**To get custom pages**

Add the following optional "appSettings" key values to the Web.config in the target SharePoint web application folder. For example, C:\inetpub\wwwroot\wss\VirtualDirectories\<PortNumber> where <PortNumber> is the port number of the target SharePoint web application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appsetting</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>If not specified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TAEssifiedSolutionURL</td>
<td>Point to the TotalAgility site URL to integrate into the SharePoint web application.</td>
<td>The TotalAgility Form site is available at the same location as the SharePoint web application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TALogonUserIdentifier</td>
<td>Point to the identifier that passes the SharePoint logon user name into embedded forms in the TotalAgility Forms site.</td>
<td>The LOGON_USER is used as the identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAWorkqueueEmbeddedForm</td>
<td>Point to the form in the TotalAgility Form site to use in the Workqueue custom page.</td>
<td>The WorkQueue.form is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAJobListEmbeddedForm</td>
<td>Point to the form in the TotalAgility Form site to use in the JobList custom page.</td>
<td>The JobList.form is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TADocURLIdentifier</td>
<td>Point to the identifier that passes the SharePoint document URL into embedded CreateNewJob forms in TotalAgility.</td>
<td>The DOC_URL is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TADocNameIdentifier</td>
<td>Point to the identifier that passes the SharePoint document name into embedded CreateNewJob forms in TotalAgility.</td>
<td>The DOC_NAME is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Example: Web.config settings to get custom pages**

```xml
<appSettings>
  <add key="TAE EmbeddedSolutionURL" value="http://domainname1:80/Forms/SharepointSite" />
  <add key="TALogonUserIdentifier" value="LOGON_USER" />
  <add key="TAWorkqueueEmbeddedForm" value="WorkQueue. form" />
  <add key="TADocURLIdentifier" value="DOC_URL" />
  <add key="TADocNameIdentifier" value="DOC_NAME"/>
</appSettings>
```

**To load the assembly from GAC**

If you select to add assembly from GAC during installation, then edit the Sharepoint Web.config file with the following:

```xml
<system.web>
  <compilation>
    <assemblies>
      <add assembly="Agility.Server.Integration.Sharepoint.CustomPages,
      Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=d86c87abe4a71948" />
    </assemblies>
  </compilation>
</system.web>
```

**To support event handlers**

*Note* If you copy and paste the code from this guide, correct any incorrect line breaks.

```xml
<configSections>
  <section name="exceptionHandling"
    ExceptionHandling.Configuration.ExceptionHandlingSettings,
    Microsoft.Practices.EnterpriseLibrary.ExceptionHandling,
    Version=5.0.505.0,
    Culture=neutral,
    PublicKeyToken=31bf3856ad364e35"
    requirePermission="true" />
  <section name="loggingConfiguration"
    Configuration.LoggingSettings,
    Microsoft.Practices.EnterpriseLibrary.Logging,
    Version=5.0.505.0,
    Culture=neutral,
    PublicKeyToken=31bf3856ad364e35" requirePermission="true" />
</configSections>

<loggingConfiguration
  name=""
  tracingEnabled="true"
  defaultCategory="General">
  <listeners>
    <add name="Event Log Listener"
      TraceListeners.FormattedEventLogTraceListener,
      Microsoft.Practices.EnterpriseLibrary.Logging,
      Version=5.0.505.0,
      Culture=neutral,
      PublicKeyToken=31bf3856ad364e35"
      requirePermission="true" />
  </listeners>
</loggingConfiguration>
```
ExceptionHandling.Logging.LoggingExceptionHandler,
Microsoft.Practices.EnterpriseLibrary.ExceptionHandling.Logging,
Version=5.0.505.0,
Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=31bf3856ad364e35"
logCategory="General" eventId="100" severity="Error"
title="Total Agility"
formatterType="Microsoft.Practices.EnterpriseLibrary.
ExceptionHandling.TextExceptionFormatter,
Microsoft.Practices.EnterpriseLibrary.ExceptionHandling,
Version=5.0.505.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=31bf3856ad364e35" priority="0" />
</exceptionHandlers></add>
</exceptionTypes>
</add>
</exceptionPolicies>
</exceptionHandling>

Note SharePoint event handler executes in the context of the user who initiated the action.

For a SharePoint site

Note If you copy and paste the code from this guide, fix the line breaks.

• Update the <system.serviceModel> section:

    <system.serviceModel>
    <bindings>
    <basicHttpBinding>
        <binding name="BasicHttpBinding_Service" openTimeout="00:10:00"
closeTimeout="00:10:00" sendTimeout="00:10:00" receiveTimeout="00:10:00"
allowCookies="true"
maxBufferSize="2147483647" maxReceivedMessageSize="2147483647"
maxBufferPoolSize="524288">
<readerQuotas maxDepth="2147483647" maxStringContentLength="2147483647"
maxArrayLength="2147483647" maxBytesPerRead="2147483647"
maxNameTableCharCount="2147483647" />
<security mode="TransportCredentialOnly">
    <transport clientCredentialType="None" />
</security>
</basicHttpBinding>
    </bindings>
    <client>
    <endpoint name="CoreIntegrationEventServiceEndpoint"
    binding="basicHttpBinding" bindingConfiguration="BasicHttpBinding_Service"
address="http://[TotalAgility server name or IP Address]/TotalAgility/Services/Core/
IntegrationEventService.svc"/>
    </client>
    </system.serviceModel>

Replace <TotalAgility server name or IP Address> with the IP Address of TotalAgility.

Note Point the endpoint address to the integration service URL for TotalAgility.
Configure the TotalAgility Integration with SharePoint using SSL

1. On the TotalAgility server, perform the following:
   a. Add the SharePoint site location and Kofax TotalAgility SharePoint communicator using HTTPS into the Kofax TotalAgility integration module (Home>Integration>SharePoint).
   b. On Kofax TotalAgility server, open the Web.config file, locate the BasicHttpBinding_SharePointCommunicatorService and set the security mode="Transport"

2. On SharePoint server, to enable SharePoint events using HTTPS, perform the following:
   a. Apply certificate onto SharePoint Server for that particular Sharepoint site.
   b. For the SharePoint site, open the Web.config file, locate the BasicHttpBinding_Service and set the security mode="Transport".

Network authentication for SharePoint and TotalAgility

Configure the network authentication for SharePoint and TotalAgility when they are on the same domain or when they are on different domains.

TotalAgility and SharePoint are on the same domain

1. Ensure that TotalAgility site has Windows Authentication in Internet Information Services (IIS) and the required SharePoint users are added to the TotalAgility server. Perform the following in the TotalAgility server:
   a. Open Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager.
   b. Click Sites > Default Web Site > TotalAgility.
   c. On the Features View tab, double-click Authentication.
   d. Right-click Windows Authentication and click Providers.
   e. Check if, Negotiate and NTLM are available as providers. If not, add them from the Available Providers list.

2. Ensure that TotalAgility SharePoint Communicator site has Windows authentication in the Internet Information Services (IIS). Perform the following in the SharePoint server:
   a. Open Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager.
   b. Click Sites > Default Web Site > TotalAgilitySharepointCommunicator.
   c. On the Features View tab, double-click Authentication.
   d. Right-click Windows Authentication and click Providers.
   e. Check if, Negotiate and NTLM are available as providers. If not, add them from the Available Providers list.
   f. Ensure that Site App pool is changed to SharePoint site App pool.
TotalAgility and SharePoint are on different domains

Ensure that TotalAgility and SharePoint domains are trusted. If domains are not trusted, Windows authentication does not work, so it must be disabled and Anonymous authentication must be enabled in IIS. The web configuration files must also be updated. The steps to modify the web configuration files are given in the sub section.

Perform the following steps in the TotalAgility server and SharePoint server:

1. Open Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager.
2. Click Sites > Default Web Site > TotalAgility.
   For SharePoint server, click Sites > Default Web Site ?> TotalAgilitySharePointCommunicator.
3. On the Features View tab, double-click Authentication.
4. Right-click Windows Authentication and click Disable.
5. Right-click Anonymous Authentication and click Enable.

Update Web.config

Update the Web.config if TotalAgility and SharePoint are on different domains.

1. In the Web.config for TotalAgility, replace <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" /> with <transport clientCredentialType="None" /> in the following bindings:
   - BasicHttpBinding_SharepointCommunicatorService
   - BasicHttpBinding_Service
   - CustomBinding_CoreService
   - WebHttpBinding_Service
2. In the Web.config for TotalAgilitySharePointCommunicator site on the SharePoint server, replace <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" /> with <transport clientCredentialType="None" /> for BasicHttpBinding_SharepointCommunicatorService binding.
3. In the Web.config for SharePoint site (C:\inetpub\wwwroot\wss\VirtualDirectories \<site port>), replace <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" /> with <transport clientCredentialType="None" /> for BasicHttpBinding_SharepointCommunicatorService binding.
4. Save the changes.

Configure the TotalAgility custom web pages in SharePoint

Integrate a TotalAgility site directly into the SharePoint web interfaces to add the following TotalAgility forms to SharePoint:
- Create new job/workflow
- Work queue
- Take activities (displaying TotalAgility take activity forms)
- Job/workflow list and job properties
TotalAgility site forms are hosted within custom ASPX web pages that are added to the target SharePoint web application.

**Enable single sign-on**

Provide single sign-on to access the SharePoint website and the TotalAgility site.

**Note** Clear the Header Form option while creating the custom pages.

Use the default username initialization variable, LOGON_USER in the top-level forms (CreateNewJob, WorkQueue and JobList) in the TotalAgility site.

**Note** You can modify the name in the LOGON_USER if needed.

When implementing these forms, SharePoint passes the LOGON_USER variable into the embedded TotalAgility forms to call the TotalAgility API `UserService::GetSession()`.

1. Map form variable, LOGON_USER to userId.
3. Map global variable, SESSION_ID to SessionId.
4. Map global variable, RESOURCE_ID to ResourceId.

Use the `GetSession()` API to avoid a separate logon to the TotalAgility forms that are integrated into SharePoint. The `GetSession()` API gets the TotalAgility session ID for the user if they are already logged on, otherwise it just logs the user.

**Note** The SharePoint user must also be a user in TotalAgility for single logon to work.

Add links to the top-level TotalAgility custom web pages in the SharePoint Quick Launch menu.

**Add the TotalAgility custom web pages to the SharePoint quick launch menu**

1. Go to Site Actions > Site Settings.
2. Under Look and Feel category, click Quick Launch.
3. Add the following new headings and rename the headings if needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Heading</th>
<th>Web Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TotalAgility Workqueue</td>
<td><code>/_layouts/WorkQueue.aspx?EmbeddedForm=WorkQueue.form</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note** Rename WorkQueue.form to point to your TotalAgility work queue form; do not change the name if the form is called WorkQueue.form. If the Quick Launch menu is on a subsite, prefix the subsite name in the link as follows:

`/SubSiteName/_layouts/WorkQueue.aspx?EmbeddedForm=WorkQueue.form`
Add the create TotalAgility workflow context menu item to a document library

Provide context menu links in SharePoint document libraries to launch the TotalAgility Create Workflow custom page. Pass in the selected SharePoint document URL as an initialization variable to the new TotalAgility workflow or job so it can be used in TakeActivity forms to provide hyperlinks to the document.

Before you add a new context menu item to a document library, complete the following steps:

1. Create a process with two initialization parameters, DOC_URL and DOC_NAME.
2. Build a Create new job form and add these initialization parameters:
   - DOC_URL
   - DOC_NAME
   - LOGON_USER
3. Modify the Getinitvarlist action to clear the DOC_URL and DOC_NAME parameters to retain values from the query string.

Add the new context menu item:

1. Create a text file with the following JavaScript:

```javascript
<script>
function Custom_AddDocLibMenuItems(m, ctx)
{
  // parse the URL out of the itemTable
  var URL = "";
  var DocName = "";
  var index = itemTable.innerHTML.indexOf("href=");
  if (index > 0) {
    var str = itemTable.innerHTML.substr(index + 6);
    index = str.indexOf('"');
    if (index > 0) {
      URL = str.substr(0, index);
    }
  }

  // remove the initialization parameters
  var url = URL + ";DOC_URL=" + DOC_URL + ";DOC_NAME=" + DocName;
  // add context menu items
  var contextMenu = new SPContextMenu(
    "TotalAgility Create Workflow", url,
    "Create a new TotalAgility workflow from this document.
    It will be added to the context menu in SharePoint.");
}
</script>
```
2. Replace the [domainname] with the location of the SharePoint web application that contains the TotalAgility custom web pages.

3. If required, specify the SharePoint subsite name in [SubSiteName].

4. Replace the [CreateNewJobFormName.form] text with the name of your TotalAgility CreateNewJob form.

5. If required, rename the menu item display text "Create workflow in TA" in the script.

6. Upload this file to SharePoint Shared Documents.

7. Provide the link to this file in Content Editor Web Part:
   
   a. Go to Site Actions > Edit page.
   
   b. Click Add a Web Part.
   
   c. In the Media and Content group, select Content Editor Web Part.
      This mechanism injects JavaScript into the SharePoint page.

8. Save the changes to the SharePoint page and exit the Edit mode.

   A new menu item, "Create Workflow in TA" becomes available from the Context list for a document in this document library. Select the menu item to go to the CreateJob.aspx TotalAgility custom web page and pass in the document URL and name.

9. Add more context menu items to use multiple Create Workflow pages.

**Configure the custom web pages**

Perform the following steps if you configure the TotalAgility custom web pages in SharePoint.

1. Download a copy of existing Seattle.master from the Master Page gallery and rename it to KTA.master.

2. Open the KTA.master file in the editor.
3. To change the page logo to TotalAgility, update the LogoImageURL as follows.  
   LogoImageURL= <SharePoint:SiteLogoImage CssClass="ms-siteicon-img" 
   name="onetidHeadbnnr0" id="onetidHeadbnnr2" LogoImageUrl="/_layouts/15/
   images/<Image>?rev=23" runat="server">
   Replace <image> with the TotalAgility image name.
4. If using Internet Explorer, update the content attribute value of <meta> tag to "IE=Edge" in the 
   KTA.master file as follows:
   <meta http-equiv="X-UA-Compatible" content="IE=Edge"/>
5. Upload the new KTA.master in the Master Page gallery as ASP NET Master Page file.
6. Publish the new KTA.master as a major version.
7. Set the new Master Page as Primary master page of your site.
8. Navigate to Site settings > Master Page and select the KTA.master page.
9. Update custom pages to use KTA.master.

Configure the TotalAgility Web parts in the SharePoint server

Configure the SharePoint site that contains the TotalAgility web parts to communicate with TotalAgility 
using web services or enabling session.

Use the Web Services
1. Open the Web.config file.
2. Add the following keys:
   • <add key="SPPServerName" value="<http or https>://<TA server 
   name>:<port>/<TASiteName>"/>. For example, <add key="SPPServerName" 
   value="https://DL-WDEML-32:85/TotalAgility"/>
   • <add key="SystemSessionId" value="<TA System Session Id>"/>
   Get the value for 
   the key from System Settings in the Kofax TotalAgility Designer.

   **Note**
   • If you do not add the "SPPServerName" key, a message informs you that the Web services 
   communications layer for TotalAgility is not configured. In the key, do not mention the Port if 
   running under port 80.
   • If you do not add the "SystemSessionId" key, a message informs you that the System Session Id 
   key is not found.

Enable session
1. Navigate to the C:\Inetpub\wwwroot\VirtualDirectories\<Port> directory.

   **Note** Get the <Port> from the address bar in Internet Explorer.
2. Open Web.config and do the following:
   a. Uncomment the line, "<add name="Session">.
      
      **Note** If add name ="Session" is not available, add the following code: <add name="Session" type="System.Web.SessionState.SessionStateModule, System.Web, Version=4.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=b03f5f7f11d50a3a"/>
   
   b. Search for the "<pages enableSessionState" tag and change the value of "enableSessionState" from "false" to "true".

3. Save the changes.

**Set up the Microsoft SharePoint and TotalAgility servers to provide fault tolerance**

**Set up the TotalAgility server**

1. Prior to setting up the TotalAgility Server, install the MSMQ support.
   a. Open Server Manager on the SharePoint Server.
   b. Select to add the Message Queuing feature.
   c. Select the Message Queuing Server, Directory Service Integration and HTTP Support.

2. Create a physical MSMQ queue on the TotalAgility Server.
   a. Navigate to Computer Management\Message Queuing\Private Queues.
   b. Create a Transactional private queue, TotalAgility/Services/Core/IntegrationEventService.svc.
      
      **Note** Select Transactional when creating the queue.

3. Enter the following two commands to configure IIS 7 to enable WAS to listen to the message queue, and activate your service when new messages arrive:

   ```
   appcmd set site "Default Web Site" -+bindings.
   [protocol='net.msmq',bindingInformation='localhost']
   appcmd set app "Default Web Site/TotalAgility" / enabledProtocols:net.msmq,http
   ```

4. Open Web.config located in the TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web directory on the installation media. For example, C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web.

5. Add the following msmq binding in the <bindings> section:

   ```
   <netMsmqBinding>
   <binding name="MsmqBindingTransactionalNoSecurity" maxRetryCycles="3" receiveErrorHandling="Move" receiveRetryCount="3" retryCycleDelay="00:01:00">
   <security mode="None"/>
   </binding>
   </netMsmqBinding>
   ```

6. Open Web.config located in the Core directory in your install location (for example, C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\Services\Core) and locate for the service tag:

   ```
   <service
   ```
7. Add the following endpoint below this service tag:

```xml
```

8. Verify that the Microsoft Windows net.msmq Listener Adapter service is started.

**Set up the Microsoft SharePoint server**

1. Open Web.config for a SharePoint site.
2. Add the following tags under `<bindings>` section:

```xml
<netMsmqBinding>
    <binding name="MsmqBindingTransactionalNoSecurity" maxRetryCycles="3" receiveErrorHandling="Move" receiveRetryCount="3" retryCycleDelay="00:30:00">
        <security mode="None"/>
    </binding>
</netMsmqBinding>
```

3. Add the following tags under `<client>` section:

```xml
```

4. Remove or comment out the following tag under `<appSettings>` section:

```xml
<add key="SPP_EventHandler_WebServiceURL" value=""/>
```

5. Replace `<TA_MACHINENAME>` with the TotalAgility server name.
6. Save the changes.
Chapter 6

Integrate Microsoft Dynamics CRM with TotalAgility

You can integrate Microsoft Dynamics CRM and Microsoft Dynamics 365 CRM with TotalAgility. To install both, the users must have the administrator rights.

See also:
• Dynamics CRM installation
• Update the Web configuration file for Dynamics CRM

Install Dynamics CRM

Follow the same steps to install Dynamics CRM and Dynamic 365 CRM.

1. Navigate to `\DynamicsCRMInstall` on the installation media, and double-click `Setup.exe`

   For Dynamics 365 CRM, navigate to `\Dynamics365CRMInstallation` on the installation media, and double-click `Dynamics365CRM_Setup.exe`.

   The installation wizard appears.

2. Click Next.

3. In the CRM Server field, enter the IP address or machine name of the CRM server.

4. In the CRM Port field, enter the port on which CRM is running.

5. To enable SSL (Secure Sockets Layer), select Use SSL (default: Clear).

6. In the Domain field, enter the domain name.

7. Enter the Username and Password.

8. Click Finish.

   The installation starts and registers Event Handler in CRM and places necessary files in Global Assembly Cache (GAC).

Update Web.config for Dynamics CRM

Add the following script for the TotalAgility components to support event handlers in Dynamics CRM and Dynamics 365 CRM:

```xml
<configSections>
  <section name="exceptionHandling"
```
<configSections>
</configSections>

<loggingConfiguration name="" tracingEnabled="true" defaultCategory="General">
  <listeners>
  </listeners>
  <formatters>
  </formatters>
  <categorySources>
    <add switchValue="All" name="General" />
    <listeners> <add name="Event Log Listener" />
    </listeners>
  </categorySources>
  <specialSources>
    <allEvents switchValue="All" name="All Events" />
    <notProcessed switchValue="All" name="Unprocessed Category" />
    <errors switchValue="All" name="Logging Errors &amp; Warnings">


      </configSections>

      <loggingConfiguration name="" tracingEnabled="true" defaultCategory="General">

      <listeners>
      </listeners>

      <formatters>
      </formatters>

      <categorySources>
      <add switchValue="All" name="General" />
      <listeners> <add name="Event Log Listener" />
      </listeners>
      </categorySources>

      <specialSources>
      <allEvents switchValue="All" name="All Events" />
      <notProcessed switchValue="All" name="Unprocessed Category" />
      <errors switchValue="All" name="Logging Errors &amp; Warnings"/>
      </specialSources>
    </errors>
  </specialSources>
</loggingConfiguration>
Update Web.config for the CRM virtual directory

```xml
<system.serviceModel>
  <bindings>
    <basicHttpBinding>
    <binding name="BasicHttpBinding_Service" openTimeout="00:10:00"
      closeTimeout="00:10:00" sendTimeout="00:10:00" receiveTimeout="00:10:00" allowCookies="true" maxBufferSize="2147483647" maxReceivedMessageSize="2147483647" maxBufferPoolSize="524288">
      <readerQuotas maxDepth="2147483647" maxStringContentLength="2147483647" maxArrayLength="2147483647" maxBytesPerRead="2147483647" maxNameTableCharCount="2147483647" />
      <security mode="TransportCredentialOnly">
        <transport clientCredentialType="None" />
        </security>
      </binding>
    </basicHttpBinding>
  </bindings>
  <client>
    <endpoint name="CoreIntegrationEventServiceEndpoint" binding="basicHttpBinding" bindingConfiguration="BasicHttpBinding_Service"/>
  </client>
</system.serviceModel>
```
address="http://<TotalAgility server name or IP Address>/TotalAgility/Services/Core/IntegrationEventService.svc"/>
  </client>
</system.serviceModel>

**Note** Replace `<TotalAgility server name or IP Address>` with the IP Address of TotalAgility.
Chapter 7

Integrate Microsoft Dynamics AX with TotalAgility

To install Dynamics AX,

- Users created in TotalAgility must have Deployment Administrator rights.
- If a user does not use the default Deployment Administrator to install the TotalAgility Dynamics AX integration, the user must meet the following conditions:
  - Be the system administrator in AX.
  - Have full CAL access.

Failure to meet the preceding criteria generates the following error message during installation: "System unable to process request error."

1. Navigate to \DynamicsAXInstall on the installation media and double-click Setup.exe. The TotalAgility for Dynamics AX Setup wizard appears.

2. Click Next.
   The window displays a list of prerequisite software for Dynamics AX.

   **Note** If the required software is not installed, first install the software and then install Dynamics AX. If using Dynamics AX 2009, install .NETFramework 3.5. If using Dynamics AX 2012, install .NETFramework 4.0.

3. Click Next.
   The Destination window appears.

4. Use the information in the following table to specify file paths in the Destination folder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination Folder</th>
<th>Sample Path for Dynamics AX 2009</th>
<th>Sample Path for Dynamics AX 2012</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DAX website Physical Location</td>
<td>C:\inetpub\wwwroot\MicrosoftDynamicsAXAif50\</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Microsoft Dynamics AX\60\AifWebServices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAX website URL</td>
<td>Default Web Site/\MicrosoftDynamicsAXAif50/</td>
<td>Default Web Site/\MicrosoftDynamicsAXAif60/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAX Client Physical Location</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Microsoft Dynamics AX\50\Client\Bin\</td>
<td>C:\Program Files(x86)\Microsoft Dynamics AX\60\Client\Bin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAX Server Physical Location</td>
<td>C:\Program Files\Microsoft Dynamics AX\50\Server\DynamicsAx1\Bin</td>
<td>Not Applicable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Click Next.
   The Credentials window appears.

6. Enter your **Username** and **Password** to associate with DAX Application pool.
7. Click Next.  
The system displays the installation status and a summary of installation report when installation is complete.
8. Click Finish.

**Important** If you are using 64 bit operating system and Dynamics AX 2009 32 bit application, enable the Application Pool account associated with the DAX Communicator site. In the IIS Manager, click Application Pools > DAXAppPool > Advanced Settings and set True for Enable 32-Bit Applications.

Create Dynamics AX service reference to the TotalAgility web service


Create Dynamics AX 09 service reference to the TotalAgility web service

1. Start Dynamics AX 09.
2. Click AOT (Application Object Tree) and press Ctrl+D.
3. In the application object tree, Right-click References and select Add service reference.
4. Complete the Add service reference window with the following information:
   b. .NET code namespace: KtaEventsService.
   c. Reference name: KtaEventsService.
   d. Service description: Description of the service reference.
5. Click OK.

Create Dynamics AX 12 service reference to the TotalAgility web service

1. Start Dynamics AX 12.
2. Click AOT (Application Object Tree) and press Ctrl+Shift+W.
3. In the application object tree, right-click References and select Add Reference.
4. Browse to the TotalAgility assembly, KtaEvents.Services.dll which was installed previously. For example, C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Dynamics AX\60\Client\Bin
5. Click OK.
Add a reference in Dynamics AX

Add a reference to the Agility.Server.Integration.Common.dll assembly in Dynamics AX.

In Dynamics AX 09

1. Right-click References and select Add reference.
   The assembly browsing form opens.
2. Browse to the ...\client\bin directory of the Dynamics AX 09 installation. For example, C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Dynamics AX\50\Client\Bin)
   The newly added assembly appears under references.

In Dynamics AX 12

1. Right-click References and select Add reference.
2. Browse to the TotalAgility assembly, Agility.Server.Integration.Common.dll, that was installed previously. For example, C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Dynamics AX\60\Client \Bin.
   The newly added assembly appears under references.
3. Click OK.

Edit the service configuration file for Dynamics AX 12

1. Browse to the client\bin directory of the Dynamics AX where the WCF service configurations file, KtaEvents.Services.dll.config was copied by the installer.
2. Edit the endpoint to point to the valid TotalAgility Service for Dynamics AX notifications (...Services/SDK/DynamicsAxIntegrationService.svc).

Copy files manually

To successfully add a Dynamics AX 2012 R2 site in TotalAgility, you must perform the following steps manually:

1. Open Microsoft Dynamics AX 2012 and navigate to Dynamics AX server folder.
2. Copy version 6.2.0 of Microsoft.Dynamics.BusinessConnectorNet.dll and paste it to the bin directory of the DAXCommunicatorService that you install on to the Dynamics AX server.
3. On your TotalAgility release media, navigate to \\TotalAgility\DAXInstallation \Agility.Server.Integration.DynamicsAx.Web\Dax2012R2.
4. Copy Web.config and paste it to the following location on your DAX Server:
   <\Microsoft Dynamics AX\60\AifWebServices\DAXCommunicatorService>
   The service uses the 6.2.0 version of the dll from the Web.config.

Note For DAX 2012 R3, the Web.config file needs updated to use 6.3.0 version of Microsoft.Dynamics.BusinessConnectorNet.dll.
Import the TotalAgility connector class into Dynamics AX

1. In the AOT, click **Import** or press Ctrl+Shift+I.
2. Click **Browse** and navigate to the Dynamics AX Setup installation folder (in the Program Files(x86) or Program Files directory). For example, C:\Program Files\Dynamics AX Setup
3. Select the XPO class, such as Class_KtaController.xpo.
4. Click **OK** to initiate the import or compilation process.

**Note** Once the class is imported, the Status tab in the compiler output page displays any errors.

Edit database X++ event methods

You can edit the database X++ event methods in the DAX Development Workspace under Classes and Application folders.

1. To alter the Application CUD (create, update and delete) class event methods, call the custom class method `EventChangeNotifyKtaWebService` when a CUD event has been performed within Dynamics AX.
2. Edit the Application class methods (**InsertLog**, **DeleteLog** & **UpdateLog**) by adding a single line to the appropriate location within each method:
   - **Insertlog** method: `new ktaController().EventChangeNotifyKtaWebService("Create", recordInserted, null, conNull(), recordInserted.RecId);
   - **DeleteLog** method: `new ktaController().EventChangeNotifyKtaWebService("Delete", recordDeleted, null, conNull(), recordDeleted.RecId);
   - **UpdateLog** method: `new ktaController().EventChangeNotifyKtaWebService("Update", recordOrig, recordUpdated, changedFields, recordUpdated.RecId);

**Note** The onsite AX Administrator registers the Database log events for various AX documents. For example, if the **Customer**, **SalesOrder** and **Purchase Requisition** documents have the Insert, Update and Delete events registered against them, and when one of these events execute for one of these documents, TotalAgility is informed through a WCF call.

Register the database log events

1. Open Microsoft Dynamics AX 2012.
2. In the left hand panel, expand the configure buttons and select System Administration.
3. In the System Administration page, under Setup, click Database logsetup. Database log window appears.
4. Click **File** > **New**. Logging Database changes wizard appears where you can add and remove tables and fields from the database log.
5. Click Next. Tables and Fields window appears.
6. Select the Show all tables radio button.
7. In the Tables and Fields window, under General Ledger, select Customers / Vendor Tables as required and click Next.
8. Select the type of change (insert, update, delete, or rename) to register in the database log by selecting the appropriate check box for the table.
9. Click Next. Logging Database changes window appears with the details of the selected tables and fields.
10. Click Finish.

Verify the Application Pool account

Verify that the Application pool account is using the correct Business Connecter.NET (BC.NET) Windows credentials.

1. On the Start menu, select All Programs > Accessories and click Run.
2. Enter inetmgr and click OK.
   The IIS Manager appears.
3. Navigate to Application Pool accounts.
4. Select the DAXKTA account and verify that the identity is the same as the BC.NET Windows credentials.
5. If the credentials differ, do the following:
   a. On the Actions panel, click Advanced Settings.
   b. Select the identity and click Edit.
6. Click OK.
   The Application Pool Identity window appears.
7. Click Set.
   The Set Credentials window appears.
8. Enter the user credentials that are associated with the BC.NET account within Dynamics AX. (The Kofax WCF service uses the BC.NET account to connect to Dynamics AX).
9. Click OK.
Integrate Microsoft Outlook with TotalAgility

Integrate Microsoft Outlook 2010 and 2013 with TotalAgility to view, complete, save and cancel various TotalAgility tasks directly from Outlook.

1. Navigate to `\OutlookInstallation` on the installation media and double-click `Setup.exe`. The system opens the TotalAgility for Outlook Setup wizard.
2. Click Next.
3. Click Finish.
4. Click Install.
5. Click Close.
6. Click OK on the confirmation message.

Once Outlook is integrated with TotalAgility, a new TotalAgility menu appears on the Outlook menu bar where you can configure the TotalAgility-related actions.

**Note** You must associate Outlook with an account. See "Configure Microsoft Outlook settings for TotalAgility" in TotalAgility help. If you do not associate an account with Outlook, the activities are not retrieved and a message is displayed.
Chapter 9

Integrate Micro Focus Content Manager with TotalAgility

This chapter provides the instructions for integrating Micro Focus Content Manager with TotalAgility Integration Server.

Prior to installing Content Manager server, install the following software:

- IIS
- .NET Framework 4.6.1
- TotalAgility (optional)

Identify the Content Manager SDK Version

These instructions only apply to Content Manager version below 8.

1. Navigate to the `C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\` directory.
2. Right-click `TrimSDKPIA20.dll` and select `Properties`.
   - The TrimSDKPIA20.dll properties window appears.
3. On the properties window, select the `Version` tab.
   - The File Version displays the current Content Manager version. For example, 7.3.0.

   **Note** For TRIM SDK 7.3.0 and later, you will require to enter this number in the `<assemblyBinding>` section of the Web.config (see Set up the Micro Focus Content Manager server).

Set up the Micro Focus Content Manager server

To set up the Content Manager server, install and configure `TotalagilitytrimCommunicatorService` and then configure the event handler in Content Manager system.

Install and configure `TotalAgilityTrimCommunicatorService`

To install and work with Micro Focus Content Manager with version 9.4 or higher, do the following.

1. Log on to the Content Manager server with an account with Local Administrator privilege.
2. Navigate to `\ContentManagerInstallation` on the Content Manager installation media, right-click on the executable `Setup.exe` and select `Run as administrator`.
   - The User Account Control window appears.
3. **Click Yes.**
The installation wizard appears.

4. **Click Next.**
The setup is ready to install the TotalAgility integration components.

---

**Note**
- If the Trim SDK already exists in your system, the **Trim SDK Detected** checkbox is by selected by default. Click **Finish**.
- If the Trim SDK does not exist in your system, the **Trim SDK Detected** checkbox is clear by default and an error message appears. Also, the **Finish** button is not enabled. To resolve this error, click **Cancel** and run Install CM_COMComponents_x64.msi from the Content Manager installation media to get the Trim SDK. Rerun the **Micro Focus Content Manager server setup**.

---

5. **Configure the Web configuration file as follows:**

   a. In **C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityTrimCommunicatorService**, open the **Web.config** file in the text editor.

   b. **Locate the configuration > runtime tag and edit the** `<assemblyBinding>` **section as follows:**

   ```xml
   <assemblyBinding xmlns="urn:schemas-microsoft-com:asm.v1">
     <dependentAssembly>
       <assemblyIdentity name="TrimSdkPIA20" publicKeyToken="533fc65e30e543fa" />
       <bindingRedirect oldVersion="6.2.2.8614" newVersion="<latest version>" />
     </dependentAssembly>
   </assemblyBinding>
   ```

   Replace the `<latest version>` with the version of **TRIM SDK**. See **Integrate Content Manager with TotalAgility**.

   c. **Edit the** `<appSettings>` **as follows:**

   ```xml
   <appSettings>
     <add key="TrimDocumentRecordType" value="DocumentRecordType" />
     <add key="TrimFolderRecordType" value="FolderRecordType" />
     <add key="WorkGroupServerName" value="ServerName" />
   </appSettings>
   ```
• Replace the DocumentRecordType with the value taken from the Content Manager server by checking the record type of Document.

• Replace the FolderRecordType with the value taken from the Content Manager server by checking record type of Folder.

• Replace the ServerName with the computer name of the Server.

To identify the computer name of the server, open Windows Explorer, right-click Computer and click Properties. In the Computer name, domain, and workgroup settings group, click Change Settings. Copy the computer name.

Important When you first install the TotalAgility Micro Focus Content Manager, a TrimIntegrationAppPool with a local system identity is created. This causes an error if the Content Manager server is remote.

To resolve this error, you must update the TrimIntegrationAppPool identity to account with Administrator permission.

Configure the event handler in Content Manager

Configure TotalAgility events for actions in the Content Manager System.

1. Copy the following DLLs.

   • If using Content Manager version below 8, copy the following DLLs to the TRIM binaries directory (usually c:\Program Files\Hewlett-Packard\HP Records Manager.)
     
     - Agility.Server.Integration.Trim.dll
     - Agility.Server.Integration.Model.dll

   • If using Content Manager version 8 and above, copy Agility.Server.Integration.Trim.dll to the TRIM directory.

3. To register the dll:
   a. Open Content Manager.
   b. Select **Tools > Context Administration > External Links**.
      The Content Manager Context External Links window appears.
   c. Click **New Record AddIn**.
      The Record AddIn Properties window appears.
   d. Enter a Link Name.
   e. In the **COM Add-In PROGID** field, enter the ProgId,
   f. Select **Add-In supports a multi-threaded environment**.
   g. Click **OK**.
      The Content Manager Context External Links window displays the new link.
   h. Select the link and click **Properties**.
      The Record AddIn Properties window appears.
   i. Click the **Used By** tab.
   j. Check the Document and File Folder under Record list and click **OK**.
      This configures the Event handler on Content Manager.

4. In the Explorer, find **trim.exe.config** file, open it in a text editor and add or replace the following tags:

```
<configuration>
  <configSections>
  </configSections>
  ...
</configuration>
```

**Note** If you cut and paste code from this guide, correct any incorrect line breaks.
<exceptionHandlers>
</exceptionHandlers>
</add>
</exceptionTypes>
</exceptionHandling>
<system.serviceModel>
<bindings>
<basicHttpBinding>
<binding name="BasicHttpBinding_Service" openTimeout="00:10:00"
 closeTimeout="00:10:00" sendTimeout="00:10:00" receiveTimeout="00:10:00" allowCookies="true"
 maxBufferSize="2147483647"
 maxReceivedMessageSize="2147483647" maxBufferPoolSize="524288">
<readerQuotas
 maxDepth="2147483647"
 maxStringLength="2147483647" maxArrayLength="2147483647"
 maxBytesPerRead="2147483647"
 maxNameTableCharCount="2147483647" />
<security mode="TransportCredentialOnly">
<transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />
</security>
</binding>
</basicHttpBinding>
</bindings>
</client>
</system.serviceModel>
</configuration>

Note Replace <TotalAgility server name or IP Address> with the IP Address of the TotalAgility server.
Chapter 10

Integrate Kofax SignDoc with TotalAgility

This chapter provides the instructions for integrating Kofax SignDoc with TotalAgility.

Set up the Kofax SignDoc server

Configure the Kofax SignDoc server to point to the relevant TotalAgility server to allow callback to occur when the signing is completed. The SignDoc server can be configured per SignDoc account to allow the same SignDoc server to callback to multiple TotalAgility servers.

Refer to the section on integration with TotalAgility in SignDoc documentation to know how to set up the SignDoc server to point to the TotalAgility server.
Chapter 11

KCM Proxy installation on the Web server

This chapter describes three methods for installing the KCM Proxy Web server:

- Silent installation
- Standard installation
- Docker installation

Ensure that the Microsoft plugin, Web Platform Installer is installed before installing the KCM Proxy Web server. You can install the Microsoft Web Platform from the Microsoft website.

Silent installation

1. On the installation media, navigate to `\KCMProxyInstallation`.
2. Launch a Command Prompt window and run `Setup.exe` and enter the KCM Server URL in the following format: `http(s)://<CCMServer>:<Portnumber>`.
   Provide the IP address and port number of the KCM server. The installer updates the Web.config with KCM server details and enables the proxy rewrite rules on the web server (IIS).
3. Press Enter.
   The KCM Proxy is installed in the silent mode.
   The system generates a log file on the desktop which reports errors (if any).

Standard installation

1. On the installation media, navigate to `\KCMProxyInstallation` and double-click `Setup.exe`. The KCM Proxy Configuration window appears.
2. Enter the KCM Server URL in the following format: `http(s)://<CCMServer>:<Portnumber>`.
   The Web.config file is automatically updated with the KCM Server IP and the Port number.
3. Click Configure.
4. Click OK.

Docker installation

While generating the "dockersetting.env" file, if the URL is specified in the "KCM Server URL" setting in the Configuration Utility tool, the same URL is used to install KCM Proxy and configure the deployment in the container.
Update the KCM Server URL in TotalAgility Web.config

You can manually update the KCM Server URL in TotalAgility Web.config or run the Configuration tool and update the settings before setting up the integration to KCM.

Manually update the KCM Server URL in TotalAgility Web.config

1. Navigate to the installation directory for the TotalAgility server.
2. In a text editor, open TotalAgility Web.config from the following directory: \TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web
3. Locate the following section:

```xml
<rewrite>
  <rules>
    <rule name="CCMInteractiveProxy" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/Interactive/(.*)" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="{http://ccmserver:port}/ccm/Interactive/{R:1}" />  
    </rule>
    <rule name="CCMDesignerProxy" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/Repository/(.*)" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="{http://ccmserver:port}/ccm/Repository/{R:1}" />  
    </rule>
    <rule name="ComposerUIJavascriptProxyRule" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/ccmcomposerui.js" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="{http://ccmserver:port}/proxy/ccmcomposerui.js" />  
    </rule>
    <rule name="ComposerUICssProxyRule" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/ccmcomposerui.css" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="{http://ccmserver:port}/proxy/ccmcomposerui.css" />  
    </rule>
    <rule name="ComposerUIImgProxyRule" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/img/(.*)" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="{http://ccmserver:port}/proxy/img/{R:1}" />  
    </rule>
    <rule name="CCMDesignerStaticProxyRule" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/static/(.*)" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="{http://ccmserver:port}/ccm/static/{R:1}" />  
    </rule>
    <rule name="ComposerUIFontProxyRule" stopProcessing="true">
      <match url="CCM/Proxy/fonts/(.*)" />
      <action type="Rewrite" url="http://{ccmserver:port}/proxy/fonts/{R:1}" />  
    </rule>
  </rules>
</rewrite>
```

4. Replace the `http://kcmsserver:<port>` with the kcmserver URL.
5. Save and close the configuration file.
Use the Configuration Utility

Run the Configuration Utility and update the configuration settings. See the Kofax Total Agility Configuration Utility Guide. (Navigate to Configuration settings > On-premise > App section).

Install KCM Proxy manually

You can install KCM proxy without using Web platform installer and KCM proxy installer.

1. Install IIS URL Rewrite 2.0.
2. Install Microsoft Application Request Routing 2.5 or higher for IIS.
3. In the IIS Manager, do the following:
   a. On server level, double-click Application request routing cache.
   b. Click Server Proxy Settings.
   c. Select Enable Proxy.
   d. Click Apply.
4. In TotalAgility Web.config, find \{http://ccmserver:port\} and replace with http://servername:port where servername is the host name of the KCM machine and port is the port KCM listed as (default 8081). See the previous section for manually updating the KCM Server URL in TotalAgility Web.config.
5. Uncomment the <rewrite> section.
6. Save and close the configuration file.
Chapter 12

Configure HTTPS communication

Configure TotalAgility and Transformation Designer for HTTP communication.

• Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS communication
• Configure Transformation Designer for HTTPS communication

Configure TotalAgility for HTTPS communication

Enable SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) communication for the TotalAgility web layer and Kofax TotalAgility Core Worker to communicate with core services and Transformation Server.

You can enable SSL for TotalAgility at the time of installation. However, if you have not enabled SSL at the time of installation, you can do so post installation by running the Configuration Utility available on the installation media. See the Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide.

Note Before changing the bindings in the TotalAgility configuration files, ensure that SSL is enabled for TotalAgility in the IIS.

Enable SSL for the TotalAgility application in IIS

1. Open Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager.
2. Right-click the Default Web Site and click Edit Bindings.
3. Click Add.
   a. On the Type list, select HTTPS.
   b. On the SSL certificate list, select the certificate.
   c. If installing a separate web server, additionally specify the IP address of the web server, and Port number.
   d. Click Ok.
4. Click TotalAgility and click SSL settings on the Features tab.
   a. Select the check box for Require SSL.
   b. Accept the Client certificates.
   c. Click Apply.

Update the TotalAgility configuration files

Update the following configuration files:

• Web.config
Update Web.config

1. Open **Web.config** located at your installed location. The default location is: C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web

2. In `<servicebehaviors>`, update the `httpsGetEnabled` setting as follows:

   ```xml
   <serviceBehaviors>
   <serviceMetadata httpGetEnabled="false" httpsGetEnabled="true" />
   </behavior>
   </serviceBehaviors>
   ```

3. By default `<security mode="TransportCredentialOnly">`. If using HTTPS mode, update the `<security>` settings as follows:

   - If using Windows Authentication, comment out the default Windows authentication section:

     ```xml
     <!-- HTTPS SSL with Windows logon-->
     <security mode="Transport"> <transport clientCredentialType="Windows"/>
     </security>
     ```

   - If logging on manually, uncomment the HTTPS section:

     ```xml
     <!-- HTTPS SSL with application authentication-->
     <security mode="Transport"> <transport clientCredentialType="None" />
     </security>
     ```

4. Perform the above HTTPS transport authentication for all the bindings:

   - BasicHttpBinding_SharepointCommunicatorService
   - BasicHttpBinding_TrimCommunicatorService
   - BasicHttpBinding_ExchangeNotificationService
   - BasicHttpBinding_DynamicsAxCommunicatorService
   - BasicHttpBinding_DynamicsAxIntegrationService
   - BasicHttpBinding_Service
   - CustomBinding_CoreService
   - BasicHttpBinding_RemoteLinkedService
   - BasicHttpBinding_LicenseServerService
   - BasicHttpStreamingBinding_Service
   - BasicHttpBinding_DeviceManagerService
   - BasicHttpBinding_InsightDataService
   - BasicHttpBinding_SigningIntegrationService
   - WebHttpBinding_Service
   - WebHttpBinding_DeviceManagerService
   - WebHttpBinding_SigningIntegrationService

5. The Secure attribute for sensitive cookies in HTTPS sessions is not set by default. This allows a browser to send these cookies in plain text over an HTTP session. To secure the cookies, uncomment the `httpCookies` tag:

   ```xml
   <httpCookies requireSSL="true"/>
   ```
6. To connect TotalAgility to a specific SQL server, ensure that "encrypt=true" for the TotalAgility database connection string.

   **Note** Ensure that SSL is enabled and certificates are installed for the SQL server. See the Microsoft documentation.
   If SSL encryption has been turned on globally at the SQL server level using force encryption, you do not need to update the TotalAgility connection strings.

7. Save the file.

**Update Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config**

1. Open **Core Worker Agility.Server.Core.WorkerService.exe.config** located at your installed location. The default location is:
   
   C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService

2. Perform the HTTPS transport authentication for all the bindings:
   
   - BasicHttpBinding_Service
   - CustomBinding_CoreService
   - BasicHttpBinding_SharepointCommunicatorService
   - BasicHttpBinding_TrimCommunicatorService

3. Save the file.

4. Restart the TotalAgility CoreWorker service.

**Update Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config**

1. Open **Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config** located at your installed location. The default location is:

   - Web server:
     
     C:\ProgramFiles\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\bin\Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config
   
   - Application server and combined Web/Application server:
     
     C:\ProgramFiles\Kofax\TotalAgility\CoreWorkerService\Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config

   **Note** Edit the Agility.Server.StreamingService.exe.config for both the Application and Web servers.

2. In **<servicebehaviors>**, update the httpsGetEnabled setting as follows:

   ```xml
   <serviceBehaviors>
   <serviceMetadata httpGetEnabled="false" httpsGetEnabled="true" />
   </serviceBehaviors>
   ```

3. By default, **<security mode="TransportCredentialOnly"]**. If using HTTPS mode, update the **<security>** settings (for Windows authentication or logging on manually) as follows:

   ```xml
   <!-- HTTPS SSL with Windows logon-->
   <security mode="Transport">
   <transport clientCredentialType="None"/>
   </security>
   ```
4. Perform the HTTPS transport authentication for all the bindings as follows:

- **WebHttpExportBinding_Service**

```xml
<binding name="WebHttpExportBinding_Service" transferMode="StreamedResponse">
    <security mode="Transport">
        <transport clientCredentialType="None"/>
    </security>
</binding>
```

- **WebHttpImportBinding_Service**

```xml
<binding name="WebHttpImportBinding_Service" transferMode="StreamedRequest">
    <security mode="Transport">
        <transport clientCredentialType="None"/>
    </security>
</binding>
```

- **BasicHttpStreamingBinding_Service**

```xml
<binding name="BasicHttpStreamingBinding_Service" transferMode="Streamed">
    <security mode="Transport">
        <transport clientCredentialType="None" />
    </security>
</binding>
```

- **BasicHttpBinding_Service**

```xml
<binding name="BasicHttpBinding_Service">
    <security mode="Transport">
        <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />
    </security>
</binding>
```

- **BasicHttpStreamingBinding_CoreService**

```xml
<binding name="BasicHttpStreamingBinding_CoreService" transferMode="Streamed">
    <binding name="BasicHttpStreamingBinding_CoreService" transferMode="Streamed">
        <security mode="Transport">
            <transport clientCredentialType="Windows" />
        </security>
    </binding>
</binding>
```

**Note** The streamed transfer mode causes the Microsoft WCF runtime to enforce some restrictions on security. The Windows authentication is not possible with streamed transfer mode. Therefore, we recommend that you use anonymous authentication. However, TotalAgility always validates the session ID before serving a request.

- **CustomBinding_CoreService**

```xml
<!--
<httpTransport authenticationScheme="Negotiate" for http with windows authentication
<httpsTransport authenticationScheme="Anonymous" for https with None authentication
-->
<httpsTransport authenticationScheme="Anonymous" allowCookies="true"
maxBufferSize="2147483647" maxReceivedMessageSize="2147483647"
maxBufferPoolSize="524288"/>
</binding>
```

5. Change the `<baseAddresses>` from http to https.
6. Save the file.
7. Restart the TotalAgility Streaming Service to apply the new settings.

Configure the Transformation Designer for HTTPS communication

Update the Kofax Transformation Designer to use SDK SVC accessed via SSL by updating the connection within Kofax Transformation Designer options. For Kofax Transformation Designer, you need to do the following for HTTPS communication:

- Make sure you have installed a certificate that is trusted by the client on the server.
- If the Transformation Designer server is installed on-premise but is not part of a domain, disable Windows Authentication for BasicHttpBinding_Service and WebHttpBinding_Service.
- Specify the URL for Transformation Designer for HTTPS as follows:
  - For Azure: https://<Azure host name>/Services/SDK
  - For other configurations: https://<host name>/TotalAgility/Services/SDK
Chapter 13

Install TotalAgility License Proxy

TotalAgility License Proxy enables unconnected Scan Workstations and/or other TotalAgility components to get licensing from the TotalAgility Licence server.

We recommend that you install TotalAgility License Proxy on the machine where VRS Elite server is installed. Otherwise, you will need to run the license utility on each workstation and configure the server to point to the proxy machine.

Do not install the Licence Proxy on the same computer as the Licence server (computer running the ‘Kofax License Server’ service). The Licence Proxy must run on a separate computer, because it needs to route traffic to the licence server. As part of the License Proxy setup, the installer checks the local computer for the TotalAgility License Server, stops the service and sets the startup type to "Disabled".

You can install the License Proxy manually or when installing TotalAgility.

1. To install manually, on the Installation media, navigate to \TotalAgility > Licensing > Installs and run Kofax.Licensing.TotalAgility.Proxy.Installer.msi. The Kofax TotalAgility License Proxy Setup wizard opens.
2. Click Next.
3. In the End-User License Agreement window, accept the terms in the License Agreement and click Next.
4. In the Destination Folder window, select the default path (C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax \TotalAgility License Proxy) where the Kofax TotalAgility License Proxy will be installed or click Change to choose another folder.
5. Click Next.
6. In the Service account setup window, enter the credentials for the user who will run the TotalAgility License Server service:
   a. In the Username field, enter the user name. To specify a domain user, enter the user name in the format Domain\User.
   b. Enter and confirm the password.
      Note This account must have access to the specified TotalAgility URL. These credentials are used for Kofax License Proxy service.
   c. Click Next.
7. In the **TotalAgility connection setup** window:
   a. Enter the URL of the License Server where the configuration settings reside. 
      Use the following format: http://<server_name>/TotalAgility/Services/Core/
      LicenseServerService.svc where <server_name> is the **TotalAgility server name**.
      **Note** If using SSL, you must have a trusted, valid certificate.
   b. Enter the System Session ID.
      Obtain the Session ID value from the TotalAgility Designer(System Settings>Settings page).
   c. Click **Next**.
      The system downloads the settings.
8. Click **Install** to begin installation.
9. Click **Finish**.
   Once the Kofax TotalAgility License Proxy for VRS Server is installed, you can verify if the proxy is
   working properly by navigating to C:\Program Files\Kofax\Imgctls\bin\Application and
   running **KSALicenseUtility**. If the proxy is configured properly, the license information appears
   in the Kofax License Utility user interface; otherwise, an error appears. You may need to reconfigure
   the System Session ID to match with the TotalAgility Server.

### Modify the TotalAgility license proxy information

You can modify the TotalAgility license proxy information after the installation, in one of the following ways.

- **Run the** Kofax.Licensing.TotalAgility.ProxyConfig.exe **typically located at** C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax\TotalAgility License Proxy\**. For example, if you regenerate
   the system session ID in TotalAgility, the same session ID must be reflected in the License Proxy
   configuration.

- **Use command line parameters.** Replace the parameters with the following values, if needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/URL</td>
<td>TotalAgility URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/sessionID</td>
<td>System Session ID for the specified user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/retrySpan</td>
<td>Length of time to retry connections to Kofax TotalAgility. Format is that accepted by TimeSpan.Parse, for instance &quot;00:00:30&quot; represents the default of 30 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/silent</td>
<td>Enables silent mode for configuration utility. User Interface does not appear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**For example,** Kofax.Licensing.TotalAgility.TenantProxyConfig /url https://tenantSpecific /sessionId {66FFD7D5-F618-4BEE-903A-54C151671BC8} /retrySpan: 00:05:00.

**Note** When you run the command with any invalid parameters an error message is sent to the standard error file.
Modify the TotalAgility license proxy information

You can modify the TotalAgility license proxy information after the installation, in one of the following ways.

- **Run the** Kofax.Licensing.TotalAgility.ProxyConfig.exe typically located at C:\Program Files (x86)\Kofax\TotalAgility License Proxy\. **Example:** If you regenerate the system session ID in TotalAgility Designer, the same session ID must be reflected in the License Proxy configuration.

- Use command line parameters. Replace the parameters with the following values, if needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/URL</td>
<td>TotalAgility URL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/sessionID</td>
<td>System Session ID for the specified user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/retrySpan</td>
<td>Length of time to retry connections to TotalAgility. Format is that accepted by TimeSpan.Parse, for instance &quot;00:00:30&quot; represents the default of 30 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/silent</td>
<td>Enables silent mode for configuration utility. User Interface does not appear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**For example,** Kofax.Licensing.TotalAgility.TenantProxyConfig /url https://tenantSpecific /sessionId {66FFD7D5-F618-4BEE-903A-54C151671BC8} /retrySpan: 00:05:00.

**Note** When you run the command with any invalid parameters an error message is sent to the standard error file.
Configure VRS Elite for TotalAgility

Install Kofax VRS and configure the VRS license server. Refer to the Kofax VRS Elite Installation Guide for more details.

Kofax VRS Basic or Professional OEM installations

If your scanner includes an OEM version of VRS Basic or Professional, install VRS by running `setup.exe` on the scan station. The VRS software is automatically activated based on the attached scanner model.

Standalone installations

If you purchased a standalone VRS license, install VRS by running `setup.exe` and select Standalone as the setup type. When prompted, specify the part number (such as VP-P005-0001), product code, and serial number to activate the software.

**Note** VRS remains activated on the workstation unless you manually deactivate it.

Kofax VRS Elite licensing managed by the TotalAgility License Server

Use this configuration to manage VRS licenses through the TotalAgility License Server while also enabling VRS Elite shared profiles and auto profile training data.

This configuration requires installation of the VRS Elite 5.1.2 or higher.

**Note** This configuration may be convenient if you have a limited number of scanners, however, it does not enable support for shared VRS profiles and training data.

Install VRS Server

1. Run `setup.exe` from the VRS Elite installation media.
2. When prompted, select **Server** as the setup type.
3. Confirm the TotalAgility license server information.

**Note** If the VRS Server does not have a direct connection to the TotalAgility license server, you need to install a license proxy.

4. Complete the steps in the installation wizard.

5. Use the generated deployment Kofax VRS.msi to install VRS on the scan stations. Refer to the *Kofax VRS Elite Installation Guide* for details.

**Use Kofax VRS Elite with the TotalAgility Scan Client**

After you install VRS Elite, Kofax Software VRS - TWAIN appears in the list of scanners when you scan a document in TotalAgility. See the *Totalagility Scan Client help* for more information.
Kofax Web Capture Service installation

Install the Kofax Web Capture Service either at the default location or to a custom location.

Install at the default location

1. When opening a scan-enabled form for the first time, a prompt appears asking you to install the new Web Capture Service. See Build a Scan Create New Job form in TotalAgility Help.
2. Click Run.
3. Select Save As if you want to keep a copy of the msi installer. The msi installer can be used for Enterprise central deployment scenarios.
4. Refresh the page once installation completes.
5. The View and Change Settings icon on the Scan Create New Job form becomes available after page refresh.
6. The Kofax Web Capture Service icon in the System Tray icons indicates if the service is running.

Install at custom location

For enterprise deployment scenarios where a custom Web Capture service installation location is required, install Web Capture service as follows.

On the Command Prompt, type the following command:

```
msiexec /i Kofax.WebCapture.Installer.msi INSTALLFOLDER=<Installation Folder>
```

Use the Web Capture Service on multiuser environment

You can use the Web Capture Service on multiuser environments, such as MS Terminal Server and Citrix. Multiple users can work with Web Capture Service at the same time from different Windows logon sessions.

Use the Web Capture Service on MS Terminal Server

When using a Terminal Server, users can connect to the scan server simultaneously and perform scanning tasks or import files in parallel. The Web Capture Service Host determines who exactly has made the request and forwards the request to the appropriate Web Capture Service Worker. The Web Capture Service Worker then works with devices and files that are available to the specific user.
**Note** The Web Capture Service can only work with scanners attached to a remote Terminal Server; it cannot work with locally connected scanners.

Similarly, for file import, the Web Capture Service provides access to files on a Terminal Server.

**Use the Web Capture Service on Citrix**

When both the Browser app and Web Capture Service are installed on the Citrix Server, the Web Capture Service physically runs on a remote Citrix server, while a scanner is connected to the client user’s computer. This works transparently for Web Capture Service when Citrix TWAIN Redirection is enabled.

**Note** The number of simultaneously active user sessions for one Citrix Server is limited to 50 sessions.

**Install the Web Capture Service as Windows Service**

To deploy and upgrade the Web Capture Service installed as Windows Service, you must have Administrator rights.

To install the Web Capture Service as a Windows Service, enable the multiuser support features by using the INSTALLASSERVICE command line option as follows:

```
msiexec /I Kofax.WebCapture.Installer.msi INSTALLASSERVICE=1
```

The MSI installation package is available in the TotalAgility installation folder at:

```
\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall\Agility.Server.Web\Forms\Controls\Capture\external\webcapture
```

**Upgrade the Web Capture Service**

To upgrade the Web Capture Service installed as Windows Service, use the same command line parameter that you used for installing the Web Capture Service.

**Note** You cannot upgrade the Web Capture Service installed as a Windows Service to the standalone version. If you try to do so, the following message appears: This application cannot be installed because you already have Web Capture Service installed as Windows service.

However, you can upgrade from the standalone installation to Windows.
The Scan Agent Service is offered through lightweight local agents that can be deployed through an msi file included in the TotalAgility installation media.

You must have sufficient privileges to install system services, otherwise the Scan Agent Service (ScanAgentService) cannot be installed.

**Service account to use for Scan Agent Service:**

If TotalAgility is configured to use Windows authentication then Active Directory account must be specified that can authenticate within TotalAgility. Otherwise, the LocalSystem account can be used.

As Scan Agent Service needs access to user profile specific folders (to access scanned images) then service account that is used for Scan Agent Service must have access to different user profiles. This means that this account must have administrative privileges. For example, when Scan Agent Service is installed on terminal server and/or different users (scan operators) use the same computer.

If Scan Agent Service is going to be deployed to end user computer then you may not require administrator privileges. For example, if Scan Agent Service is going to upload images only for a particular user then you can install Scan Agent Service under this user account.

### Standard installation

1. On the installation media, navigate to `\\ScanAgentService`.
3. Click Next.
4. In the End-user License Agreement window, select I accept the terms in the License Agreement.
5. Click Next.
6. In the Destination Folder window, either accept the default location where the Scan Agent Service must be installed, or click Change to choose another folder.
7. Click Next.
8. In the Service account setup window, specify the logon account (Windows account) for the Kofax TotalAgility Scan Agent service.
9. Click Next.
10. Click Install to begin installation.

Once installed, a local service, "Kofax TotalAgility Scan Agent Service", is created on the workstation. A companion "Scan Agent Monitor" is available, which can be used to monitor job upload status.
Scanning with Scan Agent Service

The status bar of the Scan Create New Job form indicates if the session is connected to Scan Agent Service.

The Scan create new job form offloads actual upload of images to Scan Agent Service. However if image enhancement is enabled, the Scan create new job form performs image processing in a regular way.

Once image processing operation (if any) is done, the "Create Job" button becomes available, even if images have not been completely uploaded to the server. When you click "Create Job", the job appears in the Scan Agent Monitor.

The Scan Agent Monitor can be used to monitor job upload status. The job upload statuses include:

- **Pending**: Job is being prepared for upload.
- **In Progress**: Job is currently being uploaded.
- **Finished**: Job has successfully been uploaded.
- **Error**: Job encountered an error and has been stopped.
- **Paused**: Job has been paused.

Depending on the job status, the following actions are available:

- **Abort**: Aborts and cancels the corresponding job, and prompts you for a TotalAgility user account to cancel the job with.

  **Note** This action uses a separate TotalAgility user session; if “Allow Multiple Logon” is not enabled, the abort action ends any other session using the same user account.

- **Pause**: Pauses the upload session for the job. You must explicitly resume a paused job.
- **Retry**: Queues uploading job again if the job encounters an error. This action helps in recovering from an upload error.
- **Resume**: Resumes a paused job.
- **Clear Completed**: Removes all uploaded complete jobs from the list.
Chapter 17

Launch TotalAgility

1. Enter the following URL in the browser:
   http://<TotalAgility server hostname or IP>/TotalAgility/Designer
2. Enter the login credentials provided during installation.
   TotalAgility Designer is launched in the browser.
3. Alternatively, click Start > All Programs > Kofax TotalAgility > Designer.

Launch TotalAgility Workspace

1. Enter the following URL in the browser:
   http://<TotalAgility server hostname or IP>/TotalAgility/Forms
2. Enter the login credentials provided during installation.
   TotalAgility Workspace is launched in the browser.
3. Alternatively, click Start > All Programs > Kofax TotalAgility > Workspace.

Launch Quick Capture

When you install or upgrade Kofax TotalAgility, Quick Capture is automatically installed and available on the Start menu.

To use Quick Capture, click Start > All Programs > Kofax TotalAgility > Quick Capture.

Guidance notes on logon

You can configure a single Kofax TotalAgility web installation using either of the following as these configurations are mutually exclusive:

- Windows Authentication
- Manual Logon

For example, if an organization requires "manual logon" for external users and "Windows authentication" for internal users, you cannot achieve this with a single web installation. You need two separate web sites, one to use Windows authentication and the other to use Manual logon. You can use the following options to achieve this configuration:

- Two separate web servers where one web server will have a Kofax TotalAgility web installation using Windows authentication, and another web server will have a Kofax TotalAgility web installation using
manual logon (preferred). You can upgrade the servers as they are installed using the Kofax TotalAgility installation program (by the Kofax TotalAgility installation / upgrade program).

- Single web server containing two TotalAgility web sites, where one website is configured to use manual logon and another website configured to use Windows authentication. The administrator setting up this server will install Kofax TotalAgility web installation and then clone the virtual directory.

**Note** You can upgrade the original Kofax TotalAgility web installation, but not the cloned virtual directory.
Chapter 18

Repair the TotalAgility installation

Repairing TotalAgility will only repair the application and not the database.

To repair any TotalAgility product components that are installed incorrectly:

1. Click Start > All Programs > Kofax TotalAgility and select Uninstall or Repair. The Repair/Uninstall window opens.
2. Click Repair and click Next. The Components To Repair window opens and lists all the components you can repair.
3. Select the components to repair.
4. Click Browse and select the installation files.
5. Click Next. The Credentials window opens.
6. Enter the Password or select the Run as System Account check box to choose the system credentials.
7. Click Next. The Repair Progress window opens. When the repair is complete, the Repair Complete window opens. The summary report lists the components, servers, applications and services repaired.
8. Click Finish.
Uninstall TotalAgility

Uninstalling TotalAgility only removes the application and not the database.

Use the installation wizard

1. Click **Start > All Programs > TotalAgility** and select **Uninstall or Repair TotalAgility**. The **Repair/Uninstall** window opens.
2. Select **Uninstall** and click **Next**.
3. Follow the prompts until you are informed that the product is uninstalled, and then click **Finish**. The summary report lists the components, servers, applications and services uninstalled. If any errors occur during uninstallation, you can view them in the TotalAgility log file called TotalAgilityInstallationErrorLog.txt on your desktop. This log file contains information about any errors.

Use the silent mode

1. On the Command Prompt, change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.
2. Run **Setup.exe /Silent /U**. The system uninstalls TotalAgility and automatically creates a log file on your desktop. This log file contains information on errors, if any. The removal of the product is indicated in the event log.

**Note** Uninstalling TotalAgility in silent mode not only removes the applied fix pack or service pack but also removes the TotalAgility application completely. To reinstall TotalAgility, you must install its base version and then apply any patches.
Chapter 20

Upgrade TotalAgility

You can upgrade TotalAgility from 7.0.2, 7.1.0, 7.2.0 (or any interim patches), 7.3.0 (or any interim patches) or 7.4.0 (or any interim patches) or 7.5.0 (or any interim patches) or 7.6.0 (or any interim patches) or 7.7.0 (or any interim patches) to 7.8.0.

**Note** Before upgrading TotalAgility, ensure TotalAgility App Pool and all the TotalAgility Services are stopped, and the databases are backed up.

You can choose to upgrade only TotalAgility components such as License Proxy, Transformation Designer and Transformation Server and TotalAgility databases independent of each other or upgrade TotalAgility components including databases.

Upon upgrading, the TotalAgility installer restores the following configuration settings:

- All existing AppSettings
- All existing Security Bindings
- All HTTP URL Rewrites to be done for TotalAgility 7.8.0.

**Note** After upgrading TotalAgility from versions prior to 7.7.0, you must reconfigure the license server by updating the settings to use the new licensing behavior. See Update the settings for a license server.

1. Navigate to TotalAgility Installation media and double-click **Setup.exe**.
   The User Account control window opens.
2. Click **Next**.
3. In the **Kofax TotalAgility Upgrade** window, select one of the following options:
   - **TotalAgility components**: Upgrades TotalAgility components such as License Proxy, Transformation Designer and Transformation Server.
   - **TotalAgility databases**: Upgrades only TotalAgility databases
   - **Kofax TotalAgility components including databases** (Default): Upgrades TotalAgility components including databases.
4. By default, the services are automatically started. To start services manually, clear the check box for **Automatically start services**.
5. To Import the Workspace package, select the check box for **Import system Workspace package**. (Default: Clear)
   **Note** This option is not available when upgrading only TotalAgility components.
6. Click **Next**.
   The Credentials window opens.
7. Enter the credentials (password and confirm password) and click **Next**.
   The Installation Review window opens and displays the settings.
8. Review the settings and click **Next** to start the installation.
   The Installation Progress window opens. The setup upgrades the required components.

9. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.

   If any errors occur during upgrade, TotalAgility creates a log file called **Kofax TotalAgilityInstallErrorLog.txt** on your desktop. Fix the errors.

   After upgrading TotalAgility components, if you also want to upgrade Kofax TotalAgility databases, do the following:
   a. Navigate to TotalAgility Installation media and double-click **Setup.exe**.
      The Repair/Uninstall/Upgrade Databases window opens.
      **Note** Alternatively, you can select the Upgrade Databases option from the Repair/Uninstall/Upgrade Databases window by clicking Start > All Programs > Kofax TotalAgility and select Uninstall or Repair Kofax TotalAgility.
   b. Select **Upgrade Databases**.
   c. To Import the Workspace package, select the **Import system Workspace package** check box.
   d. Click **Next** and follow the instructions.

**Capture data migration**

You can run the capture data migration process when upgrading TotalAgility. During the migration, capture data (such as folders, documents and fields) is transformed from old Data Layer tables into new format and stores in new Data Layer tables. The migration process never writes to existing old DL tables, only reads them. For higher migration throughput, the binary data (which is usually the biggest part of data) does not migrate.

**Note** When upgrading TotalAgility, there are many live jobs in system. These jobs continue their execution after the upgrade and capture data migration. For any reason if the migration process is failed, the overall TotalAgility upgrade is considered as failed and you must revert database to its previous state.

When running database upgrade with Migration Utility directly on SQL Server, we recommend that you leave enough free memory on the SQL server for better migration performance.

See the following recommendations for faster capture data migration:

- It is highly recommended to have at least 4-6Gb of free memory available before migration is running.
- Make sure that no CPU consuming processes are running on machine where migration is running.
- If possible, run migration on machine where SQL Server is running.
- If you run migration on SQL Server's machine, make sure that 'Maximum Server Memory' option is reduced to have 50% or more free memory on the machine (database server restart may be needed to free up memory). This can significantly reduce the migration time.
- It is highly recommended to store SQL Server data files on SSD (solid-state drive) disks.
Perform the following steps for capture data migration:

1. Navigate to TotalAgility Installation media and double-click Setup.exe. The User Account control window opens.
2. Click Next.
3. In the Kofax TotalAgility Upgrade window, select TotalAgility databases or TotalAgility components including databases.
4. By default, the system starts the services automatically. To manually start the services after the installation is complete, clear the Automatically start services check box.
5. To import the Workspace package, select the Import system Workspace package check box. (Default: Clear)
6. Click Next. The Credentials window opens.
7. Enter the credentials (password and confirm password) and click Next. The Installation Review window opens and displays the settings.
8. Review the settings and click Next to start the installation. The Installation Progress window displays the following:
   • The Data Read progress bar shows how much data has been read so far.
   • The Data Migrated progress bar shows how much read data has been written.
   • The Finish time ETA progress bar shows the predicted finish time of migration (ETA may change during migration as read/write throughput may change over time).

To cancel the data migration, click Cancel Migration.

Note
   • During migration process, if some broken root folders are found and data cannot be migrated, the Capture Data Migration summary panel displays the installation report. To ignore the broken folders, select the check box for Ignore broken folders and click Next. The Kofax TotalAgility Installation Complete with errors window displays the summary.
   • If any non-recoverable exception occurs during migration, the upgrade fails.

9. If the data migration is success, click Finish in the Kofax TotalAgility Installation Complete window to complete the installation.

   If any errors occur during upgrade, TotalAgility creates a log file called Kofax
   TotalAgilityInstallErrorLog.txt on your desktop. Fix the errors.

   If any database script errors occur, TotalAgility creates a log file called
   CEBPMDatabaseErrorLog.txt on your desktop. Fix the errors and run Agility.server.upgrade.exe.

Capture binary data storage

By default, the capture data is stored in the SQL Server. You can use the preconfigured external cloud data storage services such as Amazon S3 or Windows Azure Blob Storage for saving and processing the capture data. When upgrading TotalAgility On-Premise Multi-Tenancy to 7.8.0, the existing SQL Server binary data is not moved to the cloud storage. Post upgrade, you can change the storage type to Amazon S3 or Windows Azure Blob Storage from the Capture Cloud Storage tab by running the Configuration Utility. See the Kofax TotalAgility Configuration Utility Guide.
Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode

See Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode.

Upgrade databases manually

When upgrading TotalAgility from 7.0.2, 7.1.0, 7.2.0, 7.3.0, 7.4.0, 7.5.0, 7.6.0 or 7.7.0 to TotalAgility 7.8.0, do the following.

**Note** On upgrading TotalAgility to 7.8.0, the connections to the Simulator database are removed.

1. To run scripts manually, go to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts`. 
2. Run the conversion scripts (if exist) for all releases and patches starting from the version upgrading from to the version being upgraded to.

Example: If upgrading from 7.2.0.0 to 7.8.0, run the following conversion scripts.

- 7.2.0.0 to 7.2.1.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.2.1.0 to 7.2.2.1 Conversion Scripts
- 7.2.2.1 to 7.3.0.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.3.0.0 to 7.3.0.2 Conversion Scripts
- 7.3.0.2 to 7.3.1.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.3.1.0 to 7.3.1.2 Conversion Scripts
- 7.3.1.2 to 7.4.0.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.4.0.0 to 7.4.0.1 Conversion Scripts
- 7.4.0.1 to 7.4.1.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.4.1.0 to 7.4.1.1 Conversion Scripts
- 7.4.1.1 to 7.5.0.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.5.0.0 to 7.5.0.5 Conversion Scripts
- 7.5.0.5 to 7.5.0.10 Conversion Scripts
- 7.5.0.10 to 7.6.0.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.6.0.0 to 7.6.0.5 Conversion Scripts
- 7.6.0.5 to 7.7.0.0 Conversion Scripts
- 7.7.0.0 to 7.7.0.1 Conversion Scripts
- 7.7.0.1 to 7.8.0.0 Conversion Scripts

Run the scripts in the following order across databases and follow the instructions inside each script.

a. Convert_Main.sql on the TotalAgility database.
b. Convert_Audit.sql on the Audit database.
c. Convert_Archive.sql on the Finished Jobs database.

Note: If Audit and Archive databases are maintained with the same name as the TotalAgility database, then run the Convert_Audit.sql and Convert_Archive.sql scripts on the TotalAgility database.
d. Convert_Forms.sql on the TotalAgility database.
e. Convert_KLS_OnPremise.sql on the TotalAgility database.
f. Convert_PI.sql on the PI database. Run this script only if the PI database was already setup in earlier install, otherwise do not run this script.
g. Convert_DataLayer.sql on the TotalAgility_Documents database.
h. Run the following conversion scripts for the Reporting databases:
   - KofaxReportingAnalytics.SQL_Convert.sql on the TotalAgility_Reporting database.
If the previous version of TotalAgility, such as TotalAgility 7.0.2 did not include reporting databases, you must first create the TotalAgility_Reporting database and the TotalAgility_Reporting Staging database and update the Web.config file accordingly.

3. Navigate to `<C:\Program Files\Kofax\TotalAgility\Agility.Server.Web\bin>` and open `Agility.Installation.Server.Upgrade.exe.config`. In the `<appSettings>` section, update the value for the following settings.
   - `<add key="UpgradeFromVersion" value =""/>
     where the value is the TotalAgility version from which you want to perform an upgrade. For example, if you are upgrading TotalAgility from 7.7.0 to 7.8.0, set the value as follows: `<key="UpgradeFromVersion" value ="7.7.0"/>
   - `<add key="SystemSessionId" value=""/>
     Take the system session ID from the TotalAgility Designer or from the database.
   - `<add key="UserName" value=""/>
     where the user name is the currently logged on user's name.


5. Ensure that no error log is created. If any errors occur, a log file called `KofaxUpgradeDatabaseUtilityError.txt` is created on your desktop. Fix those errors and repeat the above steps.

6. Start the Kofax TotalAgility Core Worker service manually:
   a. At Run, type `Services.msc` and press Enter.
   b. Right-click `Kofax TotalAgility Core Worker` and click Start.

Upgrade reporting databases 2.0.2

Run the following scripts to upgrade the Reporting databases 2.0.2 manually:

1. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts \ 7.0.2 -> 7.1.0`.
2. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts \ 7.1.0 -> 7.2.0`.
3. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts \ 7.2.0 -> 7.3.0`.
4. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts \ 7.3.0 -> 7.4.0`.
5. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts \ 7.4.0 -> 7.5.0`.
6. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts \ 7.5.0 -> 7.6.0`. 
7. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts\ 7.6.0 -> 7.7.0`.

**Note** If you are upgrading from TotalAgility 7.1.0 to 7.7.0 (with Reporting as a part of TotalAgility 7.7.0), ensure that all the Reporting Staging database tables are empty before performing any automatic or manual upgrade.

8. Run the script from `TotalAgilityInstall\DatabaseScripts\SQL Server\Upgrade Database Scripts\ 7.7.0 -> 7.8.0`.

**Note** If you are upgrading from TotalAgility 7.1.0 to 7.8.0 (with Reporting as a part of TotalAgility 7.8.0), ensure that all the Reporting Staging database tables are empty before performing any automatic or manual upgrade.

See also:
- Upgrade process
- Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode

### Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode

When upgrading to TotalAgility 7.8.0, do the following.

1. Go to the root directory of setup.exe.
2. Navigate to `\TotalAgility\TotalAgilityInstall` and open `SilentInstallConfig.xml` using a text editor.
3. In `SilentInstallConfig.xml`, update the following parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identity Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UserName</td>
<td>username</td>
<td>Enter the name of the user who will run TotalAgility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>password</td>
<td>Enter the password for the user who will run TotalAgility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Install Info</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InstallAction</td>
<td>upgrade</td>
<td>Use this setting to upgrade TotalAgility components including databases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Parameter | Default value | Description
--- | --- | ---
upgradeTotalAgilitydatabases |  | Use this setting only if you are upgrading the databases before upgrading TotalAgility components.  

**Note** If you wish to upgrade TotalAgility components before upgrading databases, you must do the following:

a. Open SilentInstallConfig.xml available at the following location: `\TotalAgility\Installation Information\Kofax TotalAgility`

b. Update the `<InstallAction>` section with the following parameter: `<InstallAction>=UpgradedatabasesforexistingTotalAgility`

c. Run Setup.exe /Silent /U from the above mentioned path.

upgradeTotalAgilitycomponents |  | Use this setting to upgrade only TotalAgility components.

**DatabaseInformation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| IgnoreBrokenFoldersOnUpgrade | true | Ignores broken folders during capture data migration when upgrading TotalAgility.  
If not specified or set to false and broken data is found during migration, the upgrade is failed.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| StartServices | true | Starts the services automatically after upgrade installation.  
Set to false to start the services manually after upgrade installation.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Default value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ImportWorkspacepackage | false | Set to true to import the Workspace package after upgrade installation.  

**Note** Review the Kofax TotalAgility Release Notes to import the required updates for the Workspace package.

4. Open the Command Prompt window as an Administrator and change the command line to the root directory of the Setup.exe file.
5. Run `Setup.exe /Silent /Upgrade`.
   Based on the parameters set to true in the silent configuration file, the following items are upgraded automatically:
   - Kofax TotalAgility
   - Kofax Import Connector (KIC)
   - Kofax Transformation Designer
   - Utility for Kofax Export Connector

   The system generates a log file which reports errors (if any).
   The success or failure of installation is indicated in the event log.

6. Save and close the file.

See also:
- Upgrade process
- Upgrade databases manually

Upgrade Message Connectors instances

If you have installed more than one instance of Message Connector, you must upgrade all the instances of Message Connector at the time of upgrading TotalAgility. Do the following:

1. To upgrade the first instance of Message Connector, before upgrading TotalAgility, set the value of `ImportService` parameter to true in `SilentInstallConfig.xml`. See Upgrade TotalAgility in silent mode.

2. To upgrade the second instance of Message Connector, run the following command on the Command Prompt:
   ```cmd
   <\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi> TRANSFORMS=:I02 MSINEWINSTANCE=1 KOFAX="<path>" <options>
   ```
   Where, `<\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi>` is the path of TotalAgility setup folder. In `<path>`, specify the upgrade path for second instance of Message Connector. `<KIC-ED\MC02>` is appended to this path at the time of upgrade.

3. To upgrade the third instance of Message Connector, run the following command on the Command Prompt:
   ```cmd
   <\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi> TRANSFORMS=:I03 MSINEWINSTANCE=1 KOFAX="<path>" <options>
   ```
   Where, `<\TotalAgility\KIC\Export\MC\MC.msi>` is the path of TotalAgility setup folder. In `<path>`, specify the upgrade path for third instance of Message Connector. `<KIC-ED\MC03>` is appended to this path at the time of upgrade.

   **Note** For second and third instances of message Connector, optionally, in `<options>` use the following command options:
   - /qn - silent installation
   - /qb - silent installation with elementary user interface (progress bar)
   - ALLUSERS=1 - install for all users
Chapter 21

Troubleshooting

This section describes the issues you may encounter and their resolution.

TotalAgilityAppPool exists

TotalAgility creates an application pool called TotalAgilityAppPool. Ensure you do not have an existing application pool of the same name as it may cause issues when installing or upgrading.

Download software updates

When downloading an installation package or a service pack from ftp.kofax.com site, please ensure this site is added as a trusted site, otherwise the downloaded file may get corrupted.

Installation failure in IPv4 and IPv6 environment

If SQL server is configured to listen only on IPv6 addresses on a dual-stack (IPV46), client connection attempts using IPv4 address will fail and it may take longer than default timeout, contributed by default TCP timeout logic during connection establishment handshakes. Even though the subsequent IPv6 connection can succeed immediately, the connection may still fail.

To resolve this issue, disable IPv4 in SQL Server Configuration Manager.

1. Start SQL Server Configuration Manager.
2. Open the Properties for the TotalAgility server instance TCP/IP protocol.
3. Set Listen All to No.

   **Note** This setting allows fine control over which interfaces the TAServerSQLInstance will listen for connections.

4. Click the IP Address tab.
5. Set Enabled to No for all entries except for ::1 which is the IPv6 local host address.
6. Select OK to commit changes and OK at the service restart dialog.
7. Restart the SQL Server (<TAServerInstance>) service where TAServerInstance is the actual instance used by TotalAgility (for example, Kofax TotalAgility).
Images not displayed in Workspace after scanning

No images are displayed on Workspace after scanning if you log into machine as non-admin user. The images display normally if you login as admin user.

1. If you have not installed DosadiLog, the diagnostic logging tool for the WebCapture plugin, please do so now. See the instructions and download link at: http://www.eztwain.com/dosadilog.htm.

2. Edit the <system.diagnostics> section of the Web.config file as follows:

   Note If you copy and paste the code from this guide, fix the line breaks.

   ```xml
   <system.diagnostics>
   <!--sources>
   <source name="System.ServiceModel" switchValue="Information, ActivityTracing"
   propagateActivity="true">
   <listeners>
   <add name="traceListener"
   type="System.Diagnostics.XmlWriterTraceListener"
   initializeData= "c:\log\Traces.svclog" />
   </listeners>
   </source>
   <!--sources-->
   <trace autoflush="true">
   <listeners>
   <add name="ThinClientServer"
   traceOutputOptions="DateTime, ThreadId"
   type="System.Diagnostics.TextWriterTraceListener"
   initializeData= "c:\ThinClientServerLog.txt">
   <filter type="System.Diagnostics.EventTypeFilter"
   initializeData="Verbose" />
   </add>
   <!--add type="Microsoft.WindowsAzure.Diagnostics.DiagnosticMonitorTraceListener,
   Microsoft.WindowsAzure.Diagnostics, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral,
   PublicKeyToken=31bf3856ad364e35"
   name="AzureDiagnostics">
   <filter type="" />
   </add>-->
   </listeners>
   </trace>
   </system.diagnostics>
   ```

3. To ensure that non-admin users are able to log in, add the link to Trusted Sites:
   a. Go to Internet Options in IE 11.
   b. Click the Security tab.
   c. Click Sites.
   d. Add the domain to the trusted sites, for example, http://<domain>.

Exception during Transformation Designer projects import

An exception is thrown while importing projects using Transformation Designer that connects to a TotalAgility web service that uses SSL.

1. If you select to run your server using SSL, make sure the Client certificates option is set to Ignore under SSL Settings.
2. If you want to use Client certificates for authentication (Accept or Require), you must set the value for uploadReadAheadSize in IIS. Use either option to adjust this setting:

   • In the IIS Manager:
     a. Open the Configuration Editor of the TotalAgility site.
     b. In the Section list, expand system.webServer and select `serverRuntime`.
     c. In the From list, select `ApplicationHost.config <location path='Default Web Site/Totalgility'/>`.
     d. Set an appropriate value in bytes for `uploadReadAheadSize`.

   • Or, modify the IIS main config file:
     a. Open the `applicationHost.config` file located under `C:\Windows\System32\inetsrv\config\`.
     b. If the `<serverRuntime>` node does not exist yet, add it below the `<security>` node within `<system.webServer>`.

        `<location path="Default Web Site">`
        `<system.webServer>`
          `<security>`
            ...
          `</security>`
          `<serverRuntime uploadReadAheadSize="10485760"/>`
        `</system.webServer>`
    `</location>`

     c. Set an appropriate value in bytes for `uploadReadAheadSize`.

Search feature not working in TotalAgility help

   • The TotalAgility Help Search functionality does not work when Designer is run from Start > All Programs.
   To resolve this issue, add the site as a trusted site in Internet Explorer: Internet Options > Security > Trusted Sites > Sites
• The TotalAgility Help Search functionality does not work in Designer and Workspace for Internet Explorer 9.

To resolve this issue, navigate to Tools > Compatibility Settings in Internet Explorer 9 and clear the following two options:
  • Include updated website lists from the Microsoft
  • Display intranet sites in Compatibility View

Site location invalid error

SharePoint security issues can occur when the TotalAgilitySharePointCommunicator web service hosted in IIS does not have permission to access the SharePoint site in IIS. This can cause a "Site location is invalid" error when integrating TotalAgility with SharePoint.

To resolve this issue:
  1. Ensure the TotalAgilitySharePointCommunicator web service is running under the same application pool as your SharePoint site. Depending on the security trust level within SharePoint, TotalAgility can cause communication failures between TotalAgilitySharePointCommunicator and SharePoint due to permissions.
  2. Turn off ASP impersonation on the TotalAgilitySharePointCommunicator web service in IIS (if enabled); ASP impersonation is not supported by the SharePoint application pool and may cause permission issues with remote SharePoint and TotalAgility servers.

(405) Method not allowed error

While Installing TotalAgility, the error "(405) Method Not Allowed" may occur.

To resolve the issue, re-register ASP.NET 4.x for IIS.
  1. Open the command prompt.
  2. Navigate to %WINDIR%\Microsoft.NET\Framework\v4.0.30319.
  3. Execute aspnet_regiis.exe-i.

MimeType error

When trying to access the Tenant Management or TotalAgility websites from the IIS, and the web page does not render with the following error: Cannot add duplicate collection entry of type mimeMap with unique attribute field Extension set to .xap; this means there are conflicting mime types in two different configuration files (for example, one at the application level and the other at the site level).

To resolve this issue, do either of the following:
  1. Remove one of the two conflicting mimeMap extensions from the configuration files.
  2. If the IIS Administrator needs both the conflicting mime mappings, add the remove tag above the conflicting mimemap.

Example If your application has the following mimemap in the application level configuration file:
  <mimeMap fileExtension=".xap" mimeType="application/octet-stream" />

(continued)
the same mimemap in the applicationhost.config file, add `<remove fileExtension=".xap" />` above the mimemap as follows:

```
<remove fileExtension=".xap" />
<mimeMap fileExtension=".xap" mimeType="application/octet-stream" />
```

where .xap is the mime type.